

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Management Plan

ISBN 0-478-22562-8

ISSN 1171-5391-12

Canterbury Conservation Management Planning Series No. 12

Published by
Department of Conservation
Te Papa Atawhai
Canterbury Conservancy
Private Bag 4715
Christchurch

August 2004

Cover painting by:
Sean McCarthy, Moeraki Rūnaka

CONTENTS

PREFACE	7
HOW TO USE THIS PLAN	9
1 INTRODUCTION	11
1.1 Management Planning	11
1.2 Legislative Context	13
1.2.1 The National Parks Act 1980	13
1.2.1.1 National Park Bylaws 1981	14
1.2.2 The General Policy for National Parks 1983	14
1.2.3 The Conservation Act 1987	14
1.2.3.1 The Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy (CMS)	15
1.2.4 The Resource Management Act 1991	15
1.2.5 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996	16
1.2.6 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngāi Tahu and The Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998	16
1.2.6.1 Aoraki/Mount Cook and Tōpuni	18
1.2.6.2 Deed of Recognition	18
1.2.6.3 Protocols	18
1.2.6.4 Taonga Species	19
1.2.6.5 Name Changes	19
1.2.7 Non-Statutory Planning	19
1.2.8 Other Statutory Bodies with Administrative Responsibilities	19
1.3 Background	
1.3.1 Introduction	21
1.3.2 Ngāi Tahu Values relating to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park	21
1.3.2.1 Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni	22
1.3.3 The Park -Physical Character and Location	23
1.3.3.1 Landform, Geology, Soils and Climate	24
1.3.3.2 Vegetation, Flora and Fauna	25
1.3.4 Park Heritage	25
1.3.4.1 Establishment of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park	26
1.3.4.2 South-West New Zealand (Te Wāhipounamu) World Heritage Area	27
1.3.5 Recreational and Tourism Values	27
1.3.5.1 ROS and Visitor Management Settings	30
1.3.5.2 Visitor Groups	32
1.3.6 The Park within the Region	33
1.3.7 Further Information	34

2 MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OBJECTIVES	
2.1 Management Issues	35
2.1.1 Preservation and Use	35
2.1.2 Aircraft Use	36
2.1.3 Aoraki/Mount Cook Village	36
2.1.4 Huts	37
2.1.5 Introduced Plants	37
2.1.6 Park Boundary Changes	37
2.1.7 Concessions Management	37
2.2 Management Objectives	39
2.2.1 Primary Objectives	39
2.2.2 Additional Objectives	40
3 TREATY OF WAITANGI	
3.1.1 Treaty Relationship	41
4 PARK POLICIES	43
4.1 Heritage Protection	
4.1.1 Indigenous Plants and Animals	44
4.1.2 Landscape Management	48
4.1.3 Water, Snow, Ice and Riverbeds	50
4.1.4 Introduced Plants	52
4.1.5 Introduced Fauna and Domestic Animals	57
4.1.6 Historic Resources and Memorials	60
4.1.7 Natural Hazards	64
4.1.8 Fire Control	66
4.1.9 Boundaries and Land Additions	67
4.1.10 Management of Adverse Effects	69
4.2 Visitors	
4.2.1 Access within the Park	70
4.2.2 Recreational Activities	74
4.2.3 Visitor Facility Management	76
4.2.4 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles	79
4.2.5 Climbing Impacts	83
4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters	86
4.2.7 Mountain Huts	89
4.2.8 Visitor Safety and Emergency Services	93
4.2.9 Information and Interpretation	95
4.2.10 Waste Disposal	98

4.3	Concessions and Other Uses	
4.3.1	Ngāi Tahu Customary Use	101
4.3.2	Concessions General	103
4.3.3	Aircraft and Airports	107
4.3.4	Guiding	121
4.3.5	Existing Club Lodges	124
4.3.6	Utilities and Easements.	125
4.3.7	Stone/Gravel Removal and Mining	127
4.3.8	Grazing	129
4.3.9	New and Existing Buildings	132
4.3.10	Promotional Activities, Filming, Photography and Art Painting	134
4.3.11	Research and Visitor Monitoring	136
4.3.12	Military Manoeuvres, Exercises and Training	139
4.4	Working With Others	
4.4.1	Community Relationships	140
4.4.2	State Highway 80	141
5	AORAKI/MOUNT COOK VILLAGE MANAGEMENT	
5.1	Background	
5.1.1	Village Management Plan Area	145
5.1.2	The Amenity Area Status	145
5.1.3	Management in the Absence of District Plan Provisions	145
5.1.4	Village Development Studies	146
5.1.5	Village Vision and Principles	147
5.2	Village Management Objectives	
5.2.1	Primary Objectives	149
5.2.2	Additional Objectives	149
6	AORAKI/MOUNT COOK VILLAGE POLICIES	151
6.1	Village Development and Preservation	
6.1.1	Village Layout and Site Allocation	152
6.1.2	Landscape Management	158
6.1.3	Waterways and Floodways	161
6.2	Village Design and Use	
6.2.1	Building and Architectural Standards	163
6.2.2	Vehicle Access	166
6.2.3	Pedestrian Access	169
6.2.4	Commercial Zone	171
6.2.5	Semi-independent Zone	173
6.2.6	Residential Zone	175
6.2.7	Interpretation, Information and Park Administration Facilities	177

6.2.8 Community Facilities	179
6.2.9 Services	181
6.2.10 Village Fire Control	184

APPENDICES

A. The Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981	187
B. Tōpuni for Aoraki/Mount Cook	193
C. Deed of Recognition for Aoraki	196
D. Protocols on the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues	199
E. Taonga Species	208
F. Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi	210
G. Memorial Plaque Guidelines	212
H. Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group Environmental Policy	213
I. Hut Usage (Bednights) Figures 1981- 2002	214
J. ROS Visitor Management Settings Description and Criteria Summary	215
GLOSSARY	217

REFERENCES	222
------------	-----

FIGURES

1. Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park	12
2. Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni Area	19
3. Aoraki/Mount Cook Village Environs	28
4. Aoraki/Mount Cook Visitor Management Settings	72
5. Aoraki/Mount Cook Aircraft Landing Sites	111
6. Aoraki/Mount Cook Village	157

TABLES

1. Lower Tasman/Hooker Aircraft	118
2.1. Tasman Aircraft	118
2.2. Tasman Aircraft	119
3. Mueller and Hooker Aircraft	119
4. Murchison & Godley Aircraft	120
5. Heliskiing Area	120

Preface

The management plan for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park has been reviewed in accordance with the procedures set out in Section 47 of the National Parks Act 1980. This is a statutory document and provides for the management of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park in accordance with the National Parks Act, the *General Policy for National Parks* (1983) and the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000). This is the second review of the original plan published in accordance with the National Parks Act 1952.

A management plan contains detailed objectives and policies for the effective management of the Park but does not override the provisions of primary legislation and general policy. The purpose of this plan is to express the overall management intentions for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park for the next ten years.

This management plan has been prepared by the Canterbury Conservancy of the Department of Conservation and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board, in consultation with the West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancy, representatives from Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and other interested groups and individuals.

The plan acknowledges mana whenua and tāngata whenua status of Ngāi Tahu over their ancestral lands and waters within the Park. It acknowledges the Crown's relationship with and obligations to Ngāi Tahu under section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987, provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 and the Ngāi Tahu Deed of Settlement 1997. Section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987 requires the Department to so interpret and administer the National Parks Act 1980 as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi except where there is clearly an inconsistency between the provisions of the Act and the principles of the Treaty in which case the provisions of the Act apply. The plan integrates these acknowledgements at all levels.

Public notice of the intention to review the plan was given on 5 December 1998 and the public were invited to make submissions on the management of the Park. As a result 27 submissions were received within the required time-frame and were considered in preparation of the draft management plan.

The draft plan was then notified on 29 September and again on 19 December 2001. Six months were allowed for public submissions. A total of 96 submissions were received and 47 submitters were heard in support of their submissions. These submissions were taken into account in the development of the revised draft submitted to the conservation board for its consideration before its referral to the New Zealand Conservation Authority for approval.

Aoraki Mount Cook National Park is home to New Zealand's highest mountain, which is also highly significant to Ngāi Tahu as their most sacred mountain. It is a Park of dramatic landscape, harsh alpine conditions and many moods, a magnet to recreationalists and tourists alike for a century in the past and assuredly many centuries into the future. The challenge for management, addressed in this Plan, is to achieve a balance between preserving the values of this Park for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of future generations while enabling those living now to experience its natural character and raw magnificence to the fullest.

The plan will be effective for ten years from the date of approval but may be reviewed or amended at any time as a result of increased knowledge or changes in circumstance.

This plan was approved by the New Zealand Conservation Authority on the 12th day of August 2004.

A handwritten signature in dark ink, appearing to read 'Kerry Marshall', with a horizontal line drawn underneath the name.

Kerry Marshall
Chairman, New Zealand Conservation Authority

How to use this plan

This management plan provides for the management of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. The plan provides a legislative context and background section for the Park from which objectives, policies and methods have been developed.

Each park policy is numbered and has a corresponding explanation. Where a method is required to implement a policy, the number of the method matches the policy.

When using the management plan it is important to read and consider the plan and its provisions as a whole. Various objectives and policies may influence the interpretation of other parts of the plan.

Amongst other things, the plan provides guidance to assist park managers in the day-to-day management of the Park. Where additional information that may assist decision making is available, the information is referenced in the text. A full list of references is included at the end of this document.

1 Introduction

In New Zealand, national parks are areas of publicly-owned land that are preserved in perpetuity for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the public. They consist of areas that contain scenery of such distinctive quality, ecological systems, or natural features so beautiful, unique or scientifically important, that their preservation is in the national interest.

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park (see Figure 1) protects qualities and attractions that range from historic features of local interest, through ecosystems of national scientific importance, to major physical features of international significance. The Park, together with Westland/Tai Poutini and Fiordland National Parks, comprised New Zealand's first world heritage area in 1986. In 1989 the much larger 2.6 million hectare South West New Zealand (Te Wahipounamu) World Heritage Area included the three Parks, recognised by the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) as one of the world's outstanding natural areas.

The Park is unique in the New Zealand context in that it contains a cross-section of landforms and vegetation that extends from the South Island high country's braided riverbeds to the highest peaks of the Southern Alps/Ka Tiritiri o te Moana. It also includes New Zealand's highest mountain Aoraki/Mount Cook, which is also highly significant to Ngāi Tahu as their most sacred mountain.

Public recreation and tourism interests in the best-known features, the mountains and the glaciers, have been significant for over a century. For this reason, accommodation, guiding and ski plane services have a long-standing tradition in the Park.

The Park has been established to preserve its valued scenery, ecological systems and natural features in perpetuity. These values can be considered scarce and irreplaceable. As development proceeds elsewhere, they will become even more valuable, which may bring greater pressure on them. The purpose of this plan is to provide for the management of the Park in accordance with the Act so that the Park's intrinsic worth can be retained.

A challenge facing the managers of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park lies in establishing the nature and level of adverse environmental effects that may be allowed in the interest of freedom of public entry, access and use. A further challenge is also to manage that entry and access in order to ensure the Park's character and distinguishing features remain for the benefit, use and enjoyment of future generations.

The Canterbury Conservancy of the Department of Conservation administers Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. Day-to-day management is undertaken by the Aoraki Area Office based in Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.

1.1 MANAGEMENT PLANNING

The purpose of a management plan is to provide for the management of the Park in accordance with the National Parks Act 1980, the *General Policy for National Parks* (1983) and the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000).

FIG 1: AORAKI/MOUNT COOK NATIONAL PARK



The plan will direct the work of the Department in the Park from 2004–2014. As a guide for the next ten years, the plan seeks to give clear directions for management, while remaining flexible enough to allow for changing circumstances within the ten-year time frame.

The process for the preparation of a management plan is set out in Section 47 of the National Parks Act and is summarised as follows:

- an initial notice is published asking for suggestions and comments (completed December 1998);
- a draft management plan is prepared in consultation with the Conservation Board;
- the draft management plan is released for public submission for at least two months;
- those wishing to be heard in support of their submissions appear before representatives of the Department and the Conservation Board;
- the draft plan is revised in light of submissions;
- the Conservation Board considers the revised draft and the summary of submissions and may make further amendments.

When satisfied, the Board recommends the revised draft to the New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA) for approval.

The NZCA considers the amended draft, modifies it as it considers appropriate and refers the draft to the Minister of Conservation for comment.

When satisfied, the NZCA approves the management plan and this approval is publicly notified.

This Plan is the third management plan for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, replacing the Plan released in 1989.

1.2 LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT

1.2.1 *The National Parks Act 1980*

Section 4(1) of the National Parks Act, states:

“It is hereby declared that the provisions of this Act shall have effect for the purpose of preserving in perpetuity as national parks, for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use, and enjoyment of the public, areas of New Zealand that contain scenery of such distinctive quality, ecological systems, or natural features so beautiful, unique, or scientifically important that their preservation is in the national interest”

Section 4(2) provides that:

“It is hereby further declared that, having regard to the general purposes specified in subsection (1) of this section, national parks shall be so administered and maintained under the provisions of this Act that -

- (a) They shall be preserved, as far as possible in their natural state:

(b) Except where the Authority otherwise determines, the native plants and animals of the parks shall as far as possible be preserved and the introduced plants and animals shall as far as possible be exterminated:

(c) Sites and objects of archaeological and historical interest shall as far as possible be preserved:

(d) Their value as soil, water, and forest conservation areas shall be maintained:

(e) Subject to the provisions of this Act and to the imposition of such conditions and restrictions as may be necessary for the preservation of the native plants and animals or for the welfare in general of the parks, the public shall have freedom of entry and access to the parks, so they may receive in full measure the inspiration, enjoyment, recreation, and other benefits that may be derived from mountains, forests, sounds, seacoasts, lakes, rivers, and other natural features."

This management plan must be in accordance with the Act.

1.2.1.1 National Park Bylaws

Section 56 of the National Parks Act provides for the Minister of Conservation to make bylaws. Bylaws allow for the enforcement of activities that cannot be enforced through policies. The *Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981*¹ include bylaws regulating pollution of parks, disposal of rubbish, camping, use of park huts, fires, vehicles, parking of vehicles, aircraft, competitive sports, use of spotlights for hunting, portable generators and public address systems. This management plan must be consistent with current park bylaws or, if not, request additions or changes to them. The *Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981* came into force on 1 April 1981, were amended in 1996, and are attached as Appendix A.

1.2.2 The General Policy for National Parks 1983

The *General Policy for National Parks* (1983) was prepared pursuant to section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980 by the New Zealand National Parks and Reserves Authority, now replaced by the New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA). It is a guide for the interpretation and exercise of discretion contained in the Act and is directed at achieving the broad objectives of that Act. From time to time the NZCA may approve additional statements of General Policy or may review General Policies, through a public notification and submission process.

This management plan must be in accordance with the *General Policy for National Parks*.

1.2.3 The Conservation Act 1987

The Conservation Act 1987 established the Department of Conservation and directs the administration and management of all land and natural and historic resources under the Department's control (other Acts also direct the management of lands administered by the Department).

Section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987 requires of the Department that the Act and the Acts listed in the First Schedule to that Act, which includes the National Parks

¹ The by-laws and other documents pre-date the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 so place names do not reflect the current terminology (e.g. Mount Cook instead of Aoraki/Mount Cook).

Act, shall so be interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that the provisions of any of these Acts are not clearly inconsistent with those principles².

Section 6 of the Conservation Act 1987 sets out the functions of the Department. Of particular relevance to this plan are sections 6(ab), (b), (c)(i) and (e) which state:

“(ab) To preserve so far as is practicable all indigenous freshwater fisheries, and protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater habitats:

(b) To advocate the conservation of natural and historic resources generally:

(c) To promote the benefits to present and future generations of –

(i) The conservation of natural and historic resources generally and the natural and historic resources of New Zealand in particular;

(e) To the extent that the use of any natural or historic resource for recreation or tourism is not inconsistent with its conservation, to foster the use of natural and historic resources for recreation, and allow their use for tourism.”

The general functions of the Conservation Act must be read subject to the National Parks Act. In consequence, where there is a conflict or difference between the two, the National Parks Act will apply.

1.2.3.1 The Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy (CMS)

Under section 17D of the Conservation Act each Conservancy must prepare a Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) which applies to all land administered by the Department in that Conservancy. The *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* was approved in June 2000.

“The purpose of a CMS is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the National Parks Act 1980, the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990, or the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000, or any of them, and for recreation, tourism, and other conservation purposes” [*Conservation Act 1987, Section 17D(1)*].

The Canterbury CMS is the umbrella document which sets the general direction for the management of all land administered by the Department within the conservancy, including this National Park. The Canterbury CMS must not derogate from the *General Policy for National Parks* and this management plan not derogate from the CMS.

1.2.4 The Resource Management Act 1991

The purpose of the Resource Management Act is:

“...to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources”, where “sustainable management” means “...managing the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while –

² Ngāi Tahu Maori Trust Board v Director-General of Conservation [1995] 3NZLR 533.

- (a) Sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and
- (b) Safeguarding the life supporting capacity of air, water, soil and ecosystems; and
- (c) Avoiding, remedying, or mitigating, any adverse effects of activities on the environment." (Section 5, Resource Management Act 1991)

The Resource Management Act is administered by the Ministry for the Environment and is implemented by local government through district and regional plans and statements prepared by councils. The activities of the Department are affected by the provisions of the *Canterbury Regional Policy Statement* (1998), the *Proposed Mackenzie District Plan* (1999) and regional plans. The Department must apply for resource consents for activities as required under these plans. Section 4 of the Act however, provides a limited exemption to the Department for those land use activities within the Park that are provided for in a management plan or a CMS and which do not have significant adverse effects outside the boundary of the Park.

Under sections 61(2)(a), 66(2)(c), (74)(2)(b) and 104(2) of the Act councils need to have regard to the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* and to this management plan when preparing their plans, policies and/or in the context of resource consent applications, to the extent that they have a bearing on resource management issues.

1.2.5 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996

The Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 established Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu as a corporate body with the authority to act on behalf of all Ngāi Tahu whanui, subject to the provisions of the Act.

1.2.6 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngāi Tahu 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

The purpose of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 is:

- "(a) To record the apology given by the Crown to Ngāi Tahu in the deed of settlement ...; and
- (b) To give effect to certain provisions of that deed of settlement, being a deed that settles the Ngāi Tahu claims."

The Act binds the Crown. It is to be interpreted in a manner which best furthers the agreements expressed in the *Deed of Settlement 1997*. This Deed prescribes a number of values and principles that are to be addressed by the Department of Conservation in the management of the lands that it administers within the Ngāi Tahu tākiwa/territory. These have been specifically addressed, where relevant, within this plan.

Introductory section U of the Act records:

"On 21 November 1997, the Crown and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu entered into the deed of settlement in which the Crown acknowledged that Ngāi Tahu suffered grave injustices which significantly impaired Ngāi Tahu's economic, social and cultural development and which recorded the matters required to give effect to a settlement of all of Ngāi Tahu's historical claims."

The settlement resolved the long-standing grievances of the WAI 27 claim.

Mechanisms established in the *Deed of Settlement* 1997 and the subsequent Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 place a number of specific obligations on the Department with respect to the land that it administers, including Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. These obligations are in addition to the obligations imposed by section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987. Several major provisions of the Settlement are relevant to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and this Plan.

While some provisions are specific to the Tōpuni area shown in Figure 2 it is clear that activity within the National Park beyond that area could also have an effect on Ngāi Tahu values for the Tōpuni. The Department's management must recognise this. The actions required of the Department in respect of the Settlement are included throughout this Plan's policy sections.

1.2.6.1 Aoraki/Mount Cook and Tōpuni

Within the Park a more specific area has been defined as shown on Figure 2. In a highly significant and symbolic action the Crown will vest the ownership of Aoraki/Mount Cook in Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu which, in turn, will within seven days, gift the mountain to the Crown on behalf of the people of New Zealand.

The Figure 2 area is also subject to the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni. The concept of Tōpuni derives from the traditional Ngāi Tahu tikanga (custom) of persons of rangatira (chiefly) status extending their mana and protection over a person or area by placing their cloak over them or it. In its current application, a Tōpuni confirms and places an 'overlay' of Ngāi Tahu values on Aoraki/Mount Cook. A Tōpuni does not override the National Park status of the land, but ensures that Ngāi Tahu values are also recognised, acknowledged and provided for.

A Tōpuni involves three levels of information:

- A statement of the Ngāi Tahu values in relation to the area (see Appendix B);
- A set of principles aimed at ensuring that the Department avoids harming or diminishing those values;
- Specific actions which the Director-General of Conservation has agreed to undertake to give effect to those principles.

The Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board and the New Zealand Conservation Authority are required to have particular regard to the Ngāi Tahu values and specific principles in relation to Tōpuni. They are also required to consult with and have particular regard to the views of Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu as to the effect on the Ngāi Tahu values of this management plan in relation to the Tōpuni area.

1.2.6.2 Deed of Recognition

The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki (see Appendix C) requires consultation with and particular regard to the views of Ngāi Tahu during the preparation of this management plan and other listed actions of the Department, in relation to the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni area.

1.2.6.3 Protocols

Pursuant to section 282 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, the Minister of Conservation has issued Protocols in relation to the Department's relationship with Ngāi Tahu. Section 281 of the Act provides:

“...the term protocol means a statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which sets out:

(a) How the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers, and duties in relation to specified matters within the Ngāi Tahu claim area; and

(b) How the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and provide for Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu's input into its decision-making process.”

The ‘specified matters’ dealt with in the protocols are:

- cultural materials;
- freshwater fisheries;
- the culling of species of interest to Ngāi Tahu;
- historic resources;
- Resource Management Act 1991 involvement;
- visitor and public information.

The protocols make general statements about how the Department should conduct work with Ngāi Tahu in these areas. The protocols have been quoted where relevant within this Plan and are included in Appendix D.

1.2.6.4 Taonga Species

Schedule 97 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 lists those species of indigenous plants and animals that have been identified as taonga species in the *Deed of Settlement*. Those taonga species found in or near the Park are listed in Appendix E.

Ngāi Tahu value taonga species as highly prized treasure and negotiated with the Crown to have these species identified as taonga species in the Settlement. Provisions were also negotiated with the Crown to enable Ngāi Tahu to participate in the management of taonga species.

The Crown acknowledges the cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with taonga species. These values have been addressed in the Plan policies where relevant.

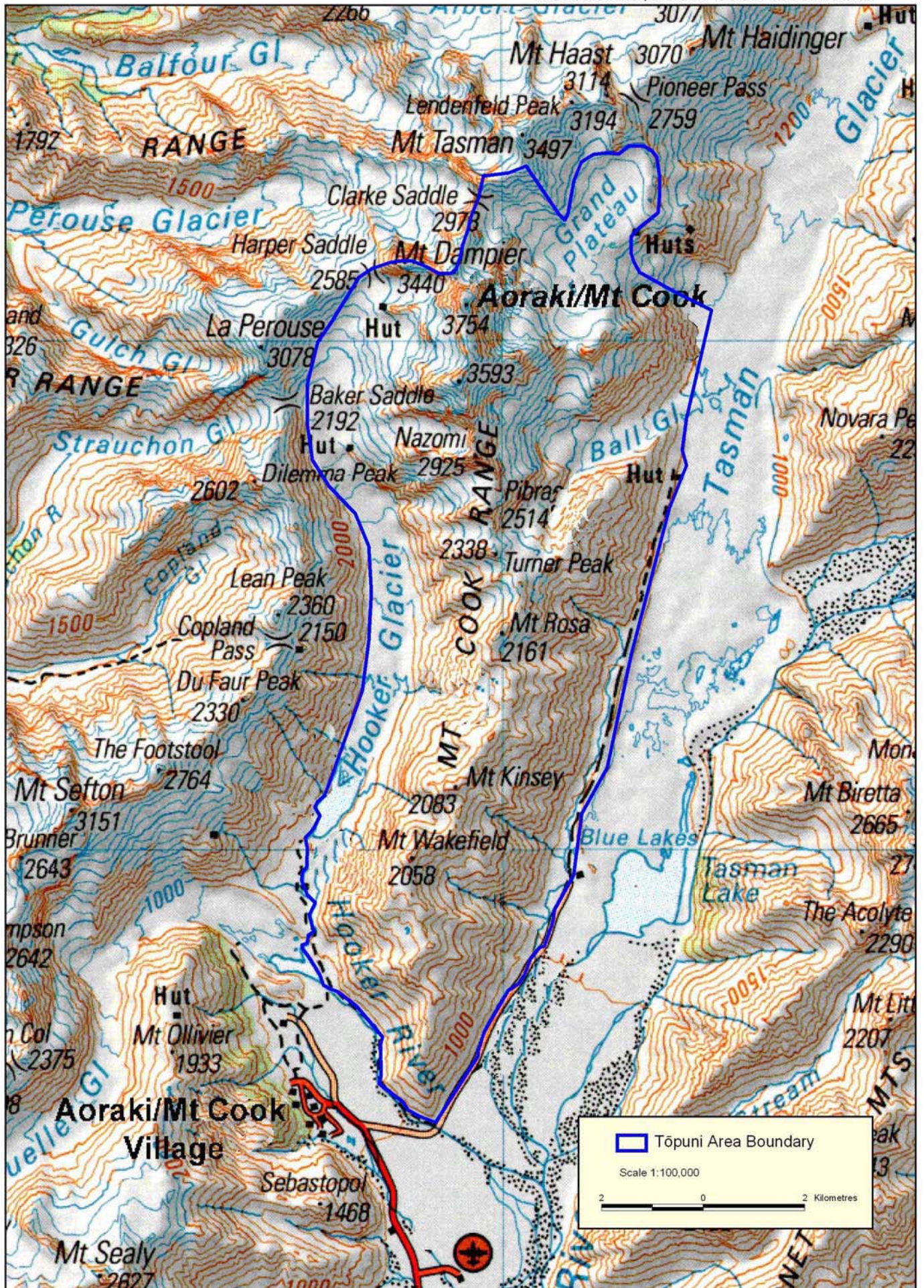
1.2.6.5 Name Changes

Another aspect of the *Deed of Settlement* of particular relevance to the National Park, is the official place name amendments. These are now Aoraki/Mount Cook - the mountain, Park and Village, and Southern Alps/Ka Tiritiri o te Moana.

1.2.7 Non-Statutory Planning

The Department produces plans, strategies and reviews of particular issues both on a local and national basis. Important documents include the national *Visitor*

FIG 2: AORAKI/MOUNT COOK TŌPUNI AREA



Strategy (1996), *Historic Heritage Strategy* (1997) and *Kaupapa Atawhai Strategy* (1997), recovery plans for threatened native species, and local animal/plant pest control plans. This plan is a further means of guidance for the implementation of these documents and strategies.

1.2.8 Other Statutory Bodies with Administrative Responsibilities

Environment Canterbury and Mackenzie District Council are responsible for regional and district planning respectively through district and regional plans, and for civil defence, water and soil conservation and air pollution control, and building consents.

The New Zealand Police are responsible for law and order, some compliance and law enforcement measures (in conjunction with Department's officers), together with search and rescue.

Canterbury District Health Board, or its successors, are responsible for public health.

The New Zealand Fire Service is responsible for determining standards of fire prevention, safety and control.

The Ministry of Transport (Civil Aviation Authority) is responsible for aviation safety and regulation.

Transit New Zealand is responsible for management of State Highway 80 which, extends through the National Park from its boundary to the intersection of Lower Terrace Road and Bowen Drive at the Village edge.

The Central South Island Fish and Game Council is responsible for the issue of sports fish and game bird licences and for the setting of related restrictions for the sustainable management of sports fisheries.

Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu is responsible for its part in the ongoing relationships between Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and the Department of Conservation, the Minister of Conservation, the New Zealand Conservation Authority and the Conservation Board. This is with respect to a series of statutory duties and functions pursuant to the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 and the *Deed of Settlement* 1997.

The New Zealand Historic Places Trust is responsible for providing the identification, protection, preservation and conservation of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and, in particular, the protection of archaeological sites and the registration of historic places.

1.3 BACKGROUND

1.3.1 Introduction

The imposing nature of the Aoraki/Mount Cook region has captured the imagination of New Zealanders and the world at large. The core of the area was first given a protection status in 1885 (see 1.3.4.1) and, subsequently enlarged, it was declared a national park in 1953 following the passing of the National Parks Act 1952. Since then it has been managed under the twin aims of the New Zealand national park philosophy: preservation as far as possible in its natural state and freedom of entry and access for public enjoyment. Currently (in 2004) Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park has an area of 70,728 hectares, with headquarters at Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.

This Background section of the management plan provides information required to understand the development of the Plan's policies and methods. For a much wider breadth of information about the natural values and history of the Park, and in particular the values, history and culture of recreational use of the Park, readers are referred to *The Alpine World of Mount Cook National Park* (Dennis and Potton, 1984), commissioned in 1984 by the former Department of Lands and Survey.

1.3.2 Ngāi Tahu Values Relating to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

The tākata whenua are Kati Hawea, Rapuwai, Waitaha, Kati Mamoe and Ngāi Tahu¹. The hapu is Kati Huirapa. The rohe of Kati Huirapa extends over the area from the Rakaia River to the Waitaki River.

Ngāi Tahu, descendants of the above tribes, are the people who hold the rangatiratanga (chieftainship) and mana (authority) within the takiwā (area) of Ngāi Tahu whānui, which includes the Park. The Crown has formally acknowledged this rangatiratanga through the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 and in the apology recorded in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

Ngāi Tahu are governed by a "tribal council", Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which is made up of 18 Papatipu Rūnanga holding the rights and responsibilities to defined areas of land and waters within the takiwā of Ngāi Tahu. These rights are founded on traditional occupations and whakapapa from ancient times to the present day. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, based in Christchurch, is the collective tribal voice, a function that in relation to most matters, is exercised through Papatipu Rūnanga.

The Papatipu Rūnanga with particular interest in day-to-day management of the Park are Te Rūnanga o Arowhenua and Te Rūnanga o Waihao, centred at Temuka and Waihao in Canterbury respectively, and Te Rūnanga o Moeraki centred at Moeraki in Otago. These organisations represent the tākata whenua for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

¹ The preference of the tākata whenua is to use the iwi southern dialect "k" spelling rather than the northern "ng". This preference has been followed except where referring to Ngāi Tahu, where the spelling used in the legislation (see 1.2.6) has been followed.

Te Rūnaka o Kati Waewae and Te Rūnanga o Makaawhio, centred at Arahura and Bruce Bay respectively on the West Coast, are Papatipu Rūnanga that also have an interest in the Park and have been consulted in the preparation of this plan.

In addition the whole of Ngāi Tahu iwi have an interest in Aoraki.

1.3.2.1 Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni

With respect to the Tōpuni and the other provisions within the Settlement (see 1.2.6 *Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 and Deed of Settlement...1997*) Ngāi Tahu values are recorded as a statement of their cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional associations. There are, however, varying versions of the Aoraki story and tākata whenua have requested the following one as an alternative to the first part of the Tōpuni statement (the full Tōpuni statement is included as Appendix B).

“Aoraki's whakapapa (genealogy)

In the beginning all was darkness (Te Pō). Out of the first glimmer of light (Te Ao), long-standing light (Te Aotūroa) emerged until it stood in all quarters. Encompassing everything was a womb of emptiness, an intangible void (Te Kore). This void was intense in its search for procreation. Finally it reached its ultimate boundaries and became a parentless void (Te Korematua) but with the potential for life. And so Te Mākū, moisture, emerged and coupled with Mahoranuiātea, a cloud that grew from the dawn. From this union came Raki, the heavens, who coupled with Pōhārūa Te Pō, the breath of life found in the womb of darkness. The first child in this chain of creation was Aoraki who stands as the supreme mountain of Ngāi Tahu.

The story of Aoraki

At this time there was no Te Wai Pounamu or Aotearoa. The waters of Kiwa rolled over the place now occupied by the South Island, the North Island and Stewart Island. No sign of land existed. Raki (the Sky Father) wedded Papa-tūa-nuku (the Earth Mother). After the marriage, some of the Sky Children came down to greet their father's new wife.

Among the celestial visitors were four sons of Raki who were named Ao-raki (Cloud in the Sky), Raki-ora (Long Raki), Raki-rua (Raki the Second), and Rāraki-roa (Long Unbroken Line). They came down in a canoe which was known as Te Waka O Aoraki. They cruised around Papa-tūa-nuku, who lay as one body in a huge continent known as Hawaiiiki. Then, keen to explore, the voyagers set out to sea, but no matter how far they travelled, they could not find land. They decided to return to their celestial home, but the karakia (incantation) which should have lifted the waka (canoe) back to the heavens failed and the canoe fell back into the sea and turned over onto its side, turning to stone and earth in the process. The waka listed and settled with the west side much higher out of the water than the east. Thus the whole waka formed the South Island, hence the name: Te Waka o Aoraki. Aoraki and his brothers clambered on to the high side and were turned to stone. They are still there today. Aoraki is the mountain known to Pākehā as Mount Cook, and his brothers are the next highest peaks near him - Rakiro (Mount Dampier), Rakirua (Mount Teichelmann), Rārakiroa (Mount Tasman). The form of the island as it is now is, owes much to the subsequent deeds of Tū Te Rakiwhānoa, who took on the job of shaping the land to make it fit for human habitation.” (Aoraki/Mount Cook – the ancestor of Ngāi Tahu, 1999)

The Tōpuni statement continues:

“For Ngāi Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Waipounamu and Ngāi Tahu as an iwi.

The melt-waters that flow from Aoraki are sacred. On special occasions of cultural moment, the blessings of Aoraki are sought through taking of small amounts of its 'special' waters, back to other parts of the island for use in ceremonial occasions.

The mauri of Aoraki represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngāi Tahu Whānui with the mountain.

The saying 'He kapua kei runga i Aoraki, whakarewa whakarewa' ('The cloud that floats aloft Aoraki, for ever fly, stay aloft') refers to the cloud that often surrounds Aoraki. Aoraki does not always 'come out' for visitors to see, just as that a great chief is not always giving audience, or on 'show'. It is for Aoraki to choose when to emerge from his cloak of mist, a power and influence that is beyond mortals, symbolising the mana of Aoraki.

To Ngāi Tahu, Aoraki represents the most sacred of ancestors, from whom Ngāi Tahu descend and who provides the iwi with its sense of communal identity, solidarity and purpose. It follows that the ancestor embodied in the mountain remains the physical manifestation of Aoraki, the link between the supernatural and the natural world. The tapu associated with Aoraki is a significant dimension of the tribal value, and is the source of the power over life and death, which the mountain possesses."

From these values for Aoraki flow the various interests that Ngāi Tahu have in the management of the Park's waters (in whatever form they may be), species (both the taonga species in 1.2.6.4 and others), recreational and tourist activity, information to the public and vistas of the mountain.

Alongside Ngāi Tahu there is a growing international movement by indigenous peoples to see more respectful management of their sacred mountains (e.g Uluru in Australia, Denali in Alaska, and Sagarmatha/Chomolunga in Nepal/Tibet).

1.3.3 The Park - Physical Character and Location

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is situated on the eastern flank of the Southern Alps/Kā Tiritiri o te Moana. Although at one of the narrower parts of this chain of mountains, the Park contains Aoraki/Mount Cook, New Zealand's highest mountain rising 3754 metres above sea level and includes most New Zealand peaks over 3000 metres high.

The Park extends along the main dividing ridge of the Alps for some 65 kilometres and shares a common boundary with Westland/Tai Poutini National Park for some 40 kilometres, but nowhere does it extend more than 15 kilometres from the Main Divide. It occupies the head of the Tasman and Godley Valleys, whose glaciers drain into the rivers and lakes of the vast inland basin of the Mackenzie Country.

The Park has a harsh environment. Over a third of the area consists of permanent snow and ice, while most of the remainder is steep actively eroding mountain lands. Only a small proportion of the park, in the Godley, Tasman and Hooker Valleys, is flat land.

1.3.3.1 Landforms, Geology, Soils and Climate

The geology is fairly uniform, consisting of greywacke (weakly metamorphosed sandstone and siltstone) and schist (more highly metamorphosed greywacke type material), which have been compressed and uplifted as a result of the Pacific plate coming into contact with the Indo-Australian plate along the Alpine Fault on the western edge of the mountains. Earthquakes generated by movement along this contact front are a recurring natural hazard of the Southern Alps/Kā Tiritiri o te Moana. The greywacke belt is considered to be relatively poor in mineral value and is not rated as a priority for exploration and prospecting.

The greywacke and schist are poorly consolidated and readily weathered and eroded, under the climatic extremes experienced in the region. Precipitation, much of it in the form of snow, is high. Prevailing westerly air currents crossing the Tasman Sea rise and release their moisture on coming into contact with the barrier of the Southern Alps/Kā Tiritiri o te Moana and then continue eastwards as the dry "nor'wester" or föhn winds. As a result the rainfall drops dramatically east of the Main Divide, from over 4000 mm at Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, to 2500 mm on the Park boundary at Birch Hill and 600 mm at the southern end of Lake Pukaki.

Winds in the mountains have been recorded gusting up to 235 km/hour at higher altitudes, though they are not so strong in the valleys. The climatic extremes experienced in the mountains require facilities, such as huts, to be specially designed to meet those conditions.

Rain and snow falling in the mountains are an essential part of the erosion process. Moisture in rocks is subject to alternate freezing and thawing, which eventually leads to fragments breaking away. In addition snowfall replenishes the snow and ice fields feeding glaciers, which have carved out the great valleys of the Park. However, during the period of European occupation the glaciers have receded, as the rate of recharge has been less than the rate of melting. Consequently the glacier moraine walls, consisting of rock fragment material deposited on the valley sides, have slumped, as the reduced volume of glacier ice can no longer support them. This instability is causing major difficulties for park management, because moraines offer easy valley access and some usable hut sites. Inherent instability of the greywacke is also a hazard for climbers in the Park. In 1991 a rock fall removed the top 10 metres of Aoraki/Mount Cook and spilt 14 million cubic metres of rock buttress and flanking glacier material down onto the Grand Plateau and down and right across the Tasman Glacier. The falling material travelled 7.3 kilometres in total, at speeds of up to 600 km/hr.

As the glaciers have receded, "pro-glacial" lakes have formed and enlarged at the snouts of the Mueller, Hooker, Tasman, Murchison, Classen, Grey/Maud and Godley Glaciers.

Another erosion factor is avalanches. These are the result of a complex relationship among various factors, such as slope angle, aspect, precipitation, wind and variations in daily temperature, allowing the development of shear planes. Avalanches are a major hazard for users of the Park, especially in winter and early spring and can occur through until late December.

Soils are immature, skeletal and low in nutrients, because their continual slow rejuvenation is counteracted by severe natural erosion. Thus, when damaged by floods, avalanche, fire or earthworks, any vegetation regeneration is a slow process.

The vegetation that does exist is of critical value for ecological, landscape and water and soil conservation reasons.

1.3.3.2 Vegetation, Flora and Fauna

Many vegetation types are present, reflecting the differences in habitat created by the variations of altitude, temperature, rain and snow, and the influence of burning during early Maori times. The vegetation ranges from alpine herb-fields through tussock grasslands to scrub and occasional stands of forest. Many of these indigenous plant communities are fragile and some contain plants regarded as rare and endangered, that require special consideration and protection. Examples are *Olearia frimbriata*, *Epilobium purpuratum* (a willow herb), *Ranunculus godleyanus* (yellow mountain buttercup) and *Ranunculus grahamii* (an alpine buttercup). Some plant species are endemic to the Aoraki/Mount Cook region. By contrast, other parts of the Park, notably the accessible valley floors much influenced by man, contain introduced plants. Some of these are a threat to the indigenous flora and plant communities, while others have a minimal influence on the Park.

The fauna is varied, though some groups, especially the invertebrates, are not yet fully known. Thirty species of indigenous birds have been recorded as breeding or visiting, ranging from the larger free-flying mountain species with a broad range (e.g. kea), to smaller birds of forest and scrub (e.g. rifleman/titipounamu) and birds of the broad open riverbeds (e.g. paradise duck/pūtakitaki). A further 15 species of introduced birds are resident in the Park. Over 700 species of insect have been recorded; some of them, especially those found at higher altitudes, are endemic to the Park. Introduced animals have an influence on the Park. Some, such as thar, hares, possums and chamois have had a serious detrimental effect on the vegetation, especially in the alpine and sub-alpine zones, while others, such as cats, stoats, hedgehogs and ferrets, are serious predators of birds and invertebrates. Land in the Tasman Valley near the Park boundary is occasionally grazed by straying cattle and sheep, due to the difficulty of fencing the current Park boundary along the Tasman Riverbed.

1.3.4 Park Heritage

Ngāi Tahu and earlier Māori activity in the area is believed to have been primarily for ceremonial and spiritual reasons, along with seasonal food gathering, particularly for birds and kiore. There is some evidence for Godley Glacier-Sealy Pass alpine crossings for pounamu (Andersen, 1916). No sites of permanent or temporary occupation have been found in the Park, although artefacts have been found and some burning of vegetation occurred. Māori traditions are strongly associated with the area (see 1.3.2.1); many geographical features are named, and Māori had a good understanding of ice and snow. As set out in 1.3.2, Aoraki the mountain, holds a special significance for Ngāi Tahu.

European interest in the Aoraki/Mount Cook region has occurred since the 1850s. During that time several sites have been occupied by homesteads, hotels and climbing huts (see list under 3.2.6 Historic Resources). Few old buildings however, have survived the ravages of fire, wind, flood and ground instability. Only a plaque, a number of larch, fir and pine trees and foundations and a fireplace now mark the original accommodation site at White Horse Hill, the first Hermitage. All that

remains of Ball Hut, the starting point for many climbing explorations, are the shattered foundations. Early farming homestead sites remain on the Birch Hill Flats. Sefton Bivouac is maintained as an historic hut; the historic Hooker Hut remains, but is under a site-stability threat; the original Empress Hut is in storage for possible museum display and some early buildings near The Hermitage are owned and maintained by the hotel owners.

Also remaining is the heritage of climbing, with and without guides, that has seen the Aoraki/Mount Cook region become and remain, the premier climbing locality in New Zealand. This climbing heritage is best understood through publications, such as Denis & Potton (1984) and Palman (2001) and the references within them.

The names given to various geographical features of the Park commemorate world explorers, European aristocracy and the nineteenth century scientific community. Only a few names are associated directly with the exploration of the Aoraki/Mount Cook region. "Aoraki" was formally added to the mountain, Park and Village names in 1998.

1.3.4.1 Establishment of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park

In 1862 the Canterbury Provincial Geologist, Julius Von Haast, gave the first detailed account of the scenic splendour of the area he had explored in what was to become the National Park. Advancing up the Tasman riverbed, he recalled:

"It was towards evening when this grand sight first burst upon us. The majestic forms of Mount Cook, Mount Haidinger, of the Moorhouse range, and many other wild craggy peaks covered with snow and ice, rose in indescribable grandeur before us, and whilst the summits were gilded by the last rays of the sun, the broad valley of the Tasman was already enveloped in deep purple shade. It was a moment of extreme delight, never to be forgotten." (Von Haast. 1948, pg.209)

Sir George Bowen, New Zealand's Governor (1868 to 1873), noted the area's tourist potential and was instrumental in saving the bush, now known as Governor's Bush. These and other accounts led to Government granting The Hermitage hotel's first lease in 1884 and appointing the owner/manager, Frank Huddleston, as a ranger.

Public and Government concern with over-grazing by sheep and repeated burning in the area prompted the 1885 establishment of the first part of the Park, the Mueller and Hooker Valleys, as a "recreational reserve". In 1887 the Tasman Valley was similarly reserved, followed by the Murchison Valley in 1917 and the upper Godley glaciers in 1927.

From the 1920s early members of the New Zealand Alpine Club and other mountain clubs lobbied for a national park system as a means of unified administration to protect natural areas and public recreation rights (see Thom, 1987).

Public debate led to the passing of the National Parks Act 1952 and subsequently the four reserves were united as Mount Cook National Park. In 1958 further large areas of the upper Godley Valley were added to the Park, with other minor additions and deletions until 1969. Today the Park is mainly defined by ridgeline boundaries (see Figure 1).

The Park name was amended on 1 October 1998 to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, in accordance with the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

1.3.4.2 South West (Te Wāhipounamu³) World Heritage Area

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park forms a key part of the South West New Zealand (Te Wāhipounamu) World Heritage Area. World heritage areas are designated under the World Heritage Convention for their “outstanding universal value” following an assessment of four criteria:

- sites nominated should be outstanding examples representing the major stages of the earth’s evolutionary history;
- sites nominated should be outstanding examples representing significant ongoing geological processes, biological evolution and man’s interaction with his natural environment, as distinct from periods of the earth’s development. This focuses on the ongoing processes in the development of communities of plants and animals, landforms and marine areas and freshwater bodies;
- sites nominated should contain superlative natural phenomena, formations or features, for instance, outstanding examples of the most important ecosystems, areas of exceptional beauty or exceptional combinations of natural and cultural elements;
- sites nominated should contain the most important and significant natural habitats where threatened species of animals or plants of outstanding universal value from the point of view of science or conservation still survive.

The exceptional natural values of the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park alone meet at least the first three, if not all four criteria (*Nomination of South-West New Zealand (Te Wāhipounamu)...*1989). The Park’s Gondwana heritage, ice age imprints, tectonic origins and biological evolution make it an internationally outstanding area.

The Department is obligated to manage the World Heritage Area in such a way that its integrity is preserved. To do this, the Department informs visitors about the area’s heritage values and provides facilities to mitigate visitor impacts. The primary obligation, however, is to protect the area’s outstanding natural landscapes, biodiversity and ecological integrity. This obligation is entirely consistent with the primary objective for managing Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

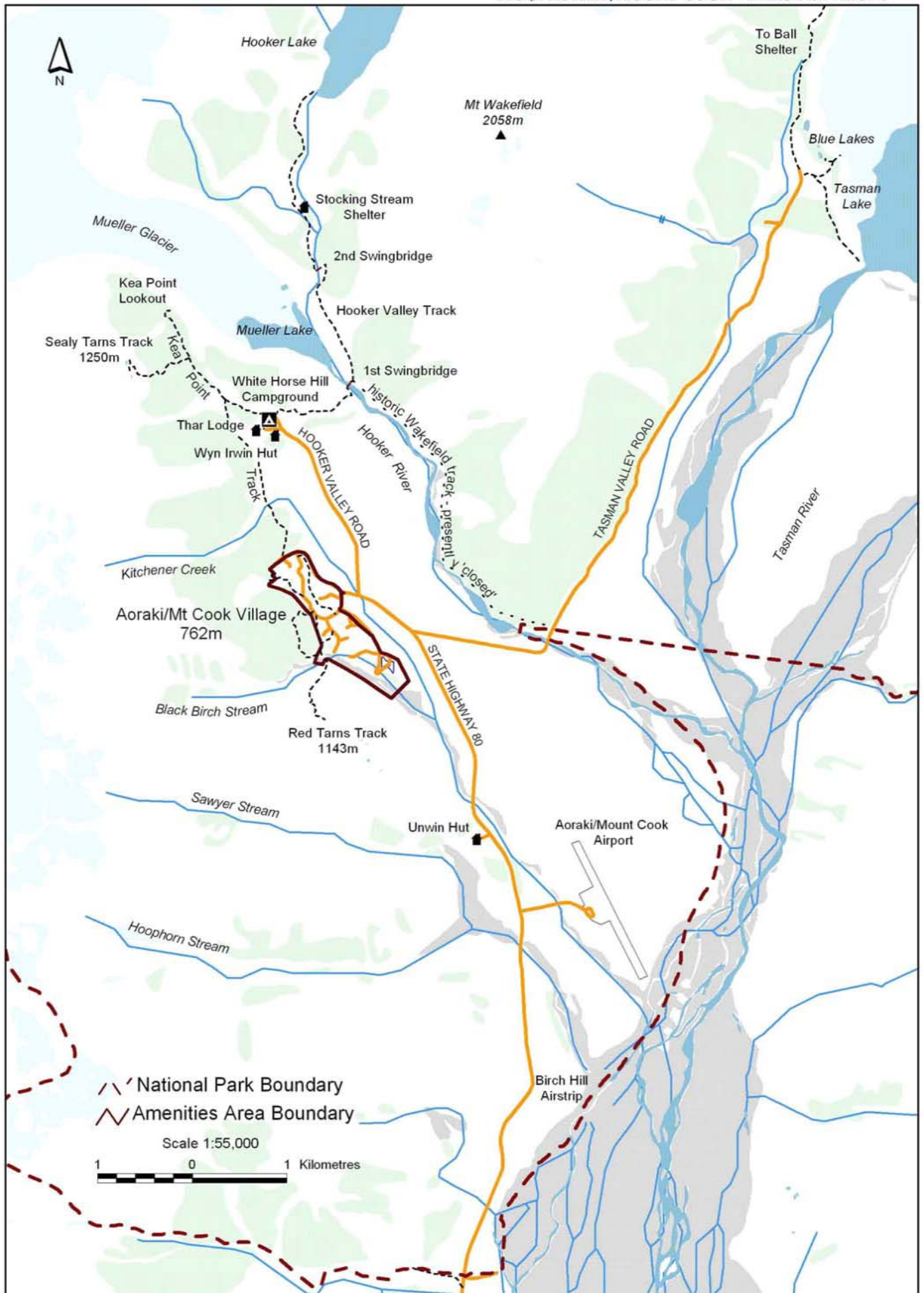
1.3.5 Recreational and Tourism Values

For much of the early European history of the Aoraki/Mount Cook region, it was only an intrepid few who managed to make their way to the mountains. Gradually visitor numbers increased over the years. The ongoing attraction has been the active and passive enjoyment of the scenic splendour of the Park, through climbing, skiing, walking, flying or just sitting, while appreciating the Park’s natural and cultural values. This attraction is well set out in *The Alpine World of Mount Cook National Park* (Dennis and Potton, 1984).

Factors leading to increased visitor use have been the The Hermitage hotel since 1884, a growing number of mountain bivouacs and huts since 1891 and later club

³ This is one of the traditional names for the South Island. The name Te Wai Pounamu is now more commonly used.

FIG 3: AORAKI/MOUNT COOK VILLAGE ENVIRONS



and public accommodation near or at the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village. Other factors have been the ski-plane flights from 1955, construction of the Mount Cook Airport in 1960, upgrading of State Highway 80 to its present high standard in 1975 and ongoing developments in the Village. Annual visits to the Village were estimated for 2001 to be in excess of 250,000. Approximately 30% of visits are by New Zealanders, while the remaining 70% are by overseas tourists, primarily from Japan, USA and Australia. Day visits comprise approximately 67% of total visits. The National Park is a significant stopping point on tours of the country by overseas tourists.

Most visitors restrict their visit to the Village environs (see Figure 3) and, to a lesser extent, aircraft flights. Visitors in the wider Park area are predominantly hut-based and total about 7000 bednights yearly (see Appendix I). This figure, while having yearly fluctuations, has been more or less constant over the past 20 years. This may reflect a move to shorter trips aided by aircraft access, changing recreation patterns, and, in part, a move by climbers to better climbing conditions in the Otago and Fiordland mountains. Taking the first factor into account, the 20 years' bednight figures may indicate an increase in the number of visits, if not an increase in visitors.

Vehicle access is limited to two routes into the Park. State Highway 80 is a sealed route to Aoraki/Mount Cook Village and runs along the western side of Lake Pukaki. Visitors arriving by the Highway travel either independently or on bus tours. The other route is a four-wheel drive vehicle track up the Godley Valley beyond Lilybank Station.

Aircraft access is a less regular means of arriving at the Park, but a major feature of public use in and over the Park. The majority of the visitors arriving by or using aircraft are overseas tourists. A fleet of ski-equipped aircraft based at Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport provides tourist flights over the Park and landings on the Tasman and other glaciers. These aircraft also fly climbers to designated landing sites in the Park. Helicopters operate mainly from sites outside the Park and fly in climbers, hunters, Tasman Glacier day-skiers and heliskiers, mainly when or where fixed-wing aircraft cannot be used. They also provide services to landing sites on the eastern and southern boundary of the Park.

Several companies based outside the Park offer fixed-wing and helicopter scenic flights over the Park but do not land within the Park. Glentanner Park, some 14 kilometres south of the Park boundary, also has a commercial airstrip.

Within the Park, access is limited by the nature of the mountain environment. Apart from State Highway 80, the Village roads and the Godley 4WD track, there are only two park roads, both unsealed (see Figure 3). One runs to White Horse Hill where a campground is provided. The other is the Tasman Valley Road to the Blue Lakes / Tasman Glacier carpark, although a 4WD track continues another 4 km to Husky Flat.

Walking tracks are concentrated around the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village environs, providing access to points of local interest and viewpoints. Beyond this localised area, there are only three other formed tracks of significance. One is up the Hooker Valley to the Hooker Glacier and Lake (the valley currently attracts over 50,000 visits per year, approximately 20,000 of which are to the Lake). Another is the old road-line from the end of the Tasman Valley Road some 8 km up to the Ball Shelter. The third is the track from the carpark to Blue Lakes and the Tasman Glacier

lookout. Walking routes also extend to Red Tarns and to Mueller Hut which by 2002 attracted over 1500 bednights use per year (note that in 2003 the old 12-bunk hut was replaced with a 28-bunk one, with the expectation of increased visitor use).

Other attractions include skiing on the Tasman Glacier, heliskiing, boating on pro-glacial lakes, biking, guided treks, 4WD tours, night star observations, short walks, school visits and visits to the Park Visitor Centre in the Village. Some visitors to the Park come for a specific purpose, such as climbing or tramping, or in lesser numbers for hunting. For these park users, huts have been established, most publicly owned and administered by the Department, others owned by clubs but available for public use, and one concessionaire-owned and operated hut. Three club lodges, primarily available for club members, are sited near the Village. One mountain guiding service operates from the Village, while several others operate from bases outside the Park.

With the exception of the Park huts, the camping ground at White Horse Hill and the three club lodges, accommodation for Park visitors is located in Aoraki/Mount Cook Village. A range of commercial accommodation is provided, including The Hermitage hotel and Glencoe Wing, motel units, chalets and YHA & Hostelling International, all currently owned by a single company, with the exception of the Hostel. There are a total of about 600 beds available in the Village for visitors.

In recent decades visitor use opportunities have been significantly affected by glacial recession and the associated moraine wall slump processes, and the implications of greater knowledge about geological stability and avalanche dangers. Several mountain huts have been destroyed or had to be moved or removed, access to some huts has become difficult, some tracks and access routes have eroded away, major flood protection works have been required in the Village and ski-plane landing sites have become unusable especially from mid-summer. On the positive side the growing pro-glacial lakes are providing greater boating opportunities.

To service the Park and its visitors, the Village has a permanent population of approximately 150, augmented by temporary staff during the summer. Some concessionaire staff are resident outside the Park. The Department provides a wide range of local body services in the Village.

1.3.5.1 Visitor Management Settings

Visitor management settings can be arrived at by identifying the values of importance to visitors and the natural, historic and cultural values of the Park within different areas.

Providing for appropriate recreational ('visitor') use is one of the principal functions of the Department, where that use is not inconsistent with the preservation of the Park. In meeting the section 4(2)(a) National Parks Act principle of encouraging "...inspiration, enjoyment, recreation and other benefits..", the Department recognises that these are park values that can be positively or negatively affected through the management of visitor use.

The Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS) is a recreation planning method that is used to help identify the visitor management settings (e.g. the upper Hooker Valley), which are managed to provide for particular Park values or visitor experiences in an area, such as physical challenge, natural quiet, self-reliance and

isolation. By providing a range of recreational opportunities within management settings, visitors are able to choose an area of the Park that most closely matches the experience they wish to have in the Park.

The settings strongly influence the nature and standard of visitor facilities (e.g. huts and tracks) provided throughout the Park. They can also be used to ensure that concession activities are managed so as not to detract from the desired experiences of visitors and to assist in the management of adverse effects (e.g. aircraft noise) or conflicts between visitor activities.

This ROS approach is set out in *The New Zealand Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Guidelines for Users* (1993), the *Recreation Strategy for Canterbury Conservancy* (1994) and the *Visitor Strategy* (1996).

Visitor management settings appropriate for the Park, based on those in the above references, have been used in this plan. The settings are:

1. Backcountry remote;
2. Backcountry walk in;
3. Backcountry accessible - motorized;
4. Front-country – short-stop;
5. Highways, roadside opportunities and visitor service sites.

The ROS visitor management settings description and criteria summary for each are set out in Appendix J, except for the fifth setting⁴. The areas of the Park to which they relate are shown on Figures 4 and 4A within 4.2.1 Access, which is the policy section that adopts the ROS system for this Park.

It is essential to understand that any national park is one part of a national system of public conservation and other recreational lands. Each park needs to be considered within the national ROS framework. The ROS areas for Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park should focus on any opportunities that are unique or nationally best represented within the Park. Where comparable experiences can be or are

⁴ The fifth setting, Highways, roadside opportunities and visitor service sites, is a specific one for the Park and is a sub-set of the urban and/or rural ROS settings. It has the following aspects.

From a long way outside the Park, State Highway 80 provides travellers with continuous vistas up the Tasman Valley of high country vegetation, snowy mountains and the braided Tasman Riverbed. Potential changes to the National Park boundary could see more of this setting coming into the Park (see 4.1.9 Boundaries and Land Additions).

Visitor facilities are limited to roadside lookouts, except within visitor service sites. These are where facilities for the travelling public extend beyond basic utilities, such as picnic areas, walking tracks and toilets, to include facilities such as cafes, shops, overnight accommodation and airstrips. One service site is near the Park at Glentanner and two are within the National Park at the Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport and the Village.

adequately provided for outside the Park, there will be a reduced need to provide for them inside the Park.

So, what are the Park's unique or national attributes? Typical features are high mountains, large glaciers and rugged snow-capped mountain scenery. It has international recognition as a mountain climbing area, is well known and serviced for its guiding, mountain and snow craft training and for cross country and glacial skiing and has iconic status as a premium national and international visitor destination, with the most extensive village accommodation complex of any South Island National Park.

These attributes have evolved over approximately 100 years, with services and accommodation well established to cater for high numbers of visitors to the Village environs.

The accessible valleys have a good range of short walks (1-4 hours), taking into account the constraints imposed by the surrounding steep topography. Some walks however, (e.g. Hooker Valley) have become popular to the extent that their use levels are sometimes adverse to both the visitor experience and the valley tracks.

With 13 alpine huts scattered throughout the Park, visitors are well serviced, compared with the majority of the surrounding high alpine areas. Aircraft use for recreation access, scenic flights and snow landings is a well established service.

Many visitors now come to parts of the Park expecting to encounter significant numbers of people seeking the same experience as themselves. For many though, their experience would be enhanced if they were better able to achieve a sense of solitude, exploration, contemplation or inspiration, compatible with the "remoteness" or "wildness" of their setting.

1.3.5.2 Visitor Groups

The Department's national *Visitor Strategy* (1996) identifies seven representative visitor groups. These groups are:

- short-stop travellers;
- day visitors;
- overnighers;
- backcountry comfort-seekers;
- backcountry adventurers;
- remoteness seekers;
- thrill seekers.

The two frameworks of visitor management settings and visitor groups are cross-referenced within the Appendix J table. As previously stated for the ROS settings in 1.3.5.1 above, all national parks need to be considered within the national ROS framework. The provisions for different visitor groups within Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park should focus on any opportunities that are unique or nationally best represented within the Park.

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park primarily provides for:

- short-stop travellers, day visitors, overnighers and backcountry comfort-seekers within the front-country and backcountry accessible settings; and
- backcountry adventurers and remoteness seekers within the backcountry walk-in and backcountry remote settings.

The Park is not seen as a primary area for backcountry comfort-seekers (other than those using the aircraft scenic landing services or to some extent those visiting Mueller Hut) or thrill seekers. Both of these groups are well provided for in areas outside the Park. Thrill seeker visitors participate in activities such as extreme downhill skiing or snowboarding, parapenting, bungee jumping and trail bike riding. Activities such as mountaineering often involve journeys through wild places and are classified as backcountry adventurers or remoteness seekers, even though they may have elements of thrill seeking.

1.3.6 The Park within the Region

From a number of different perspectives, the Park cannot be considered in isolation, but has to be regarded as part of a wider area. As a part of the Southern Alps/Ka Tiritiri o te Moana, the Aoraki/Mount Cook area contains some biological, landscape and recreational features, which are duplicated elsewhere, but it also contains other features which are unique. This latter category includes the physical beauty and climbing challenge of the array of high peaks, the sheer size of the glaciers, the endemic flora and fauna and the extent of opportunities for scenic ski-plane landings in a mountainous area.

The National Park is the source of much of the water flowing through the turbines of the Upper Waitaki and Waitaki River power stations and, as the head of the Waitaki catchment, has an important water and soil conservation role. It is a significant area of biological and scientific interest in the Mackenzie Basin and in South Canterbury generally. Compared with other parts of the Mackenzie Basin, there are a number of disadvantages from a tourist point of view, such as lower sunshine hours, lower mean daily temperatures and higher rainfall, but these are balanced by the opportunity to travel among the mountains. The Park is a popular destination on the tourist route from Christchurch to Milford Sound and provides employment opportunities and benefits to a number of district businesses and adjacent high country stations. One business, having a particularly direct relationship with the Park, is Glentanner Park, approximately 20 km south of the Park on State Highway 80. While still a pastoral lease, the lessees have in recent years diversified into other activities, including a motor camp, airfield, heliskiing and a restaurant. These activities complement those provided for in the National Park and increase the range of visitor attractions available in the region. Pastoral farming, as found at Glentanner Station, with retirement or surrender of erosion-prone and high conservation value country, is typical of land management adjoining the Canterbury side of the National Park.

On its western boundary Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is closely linked with Westland/Tai Poutini National Park, sharing features including physical similarity, similar management objectives, and complementary visitor management settings,

hut locations, radio networks and aircraft movements. There are several transalpine tramping/climbing routes (e.g. Copland Pass).

Many national mountain safety and rescue skills developed in the Park as a consequence of it being a centre for New Zealand mountaineering.

Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is a unique area in New Zealand. It has the country's highest peak (Aoraki/Mount Cook) and longest glacier (Tasman Glacier), amidst an expanse of other mountains and glaciers. It has high values for Ngai Tahu, and high recreational and tourism values.

1.3.7 Further Information

Background information on the Park contained in this section is a summary of the knowledge gained over the years. It concentrates on the matters relevant to Park management and to this Management Plan.

Other publications are available which provide additional information about the Aoraki/Mount Cook area. Some of these are now out of print and will require referencing through libraries.

Apperley, S.M. 1981. *Bibliography for Mount Cook National Park*. National Parks and Reserves Authority, Wellington.

Connor, H. E. (ed.) 1973. *Mount Cook National Park*. Mount Cook National Park Board, Christchurch.

Dennis, A. and Potton, C. 1984. *The Alpine World of Mount Cook National Park*. Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington, and Cobb/Horwood Publications, Auckland.

Ernst & Young and Beca Hollings & Ferner Ltd, 1997. *Mount Cook/Aoraki Village Development Issues and Options Report*. Ernst & Young and Beca Hollings & Ferner Ltd, Wellington.

Palman, A.J. 2001. *Aoraki Mount Cook : a guide to mountaineering in the Aoraki/Mount Cook region, including the Westland Glaciers and Godley Valley*. New Zealand Alpine Club, New Zealand.

Pearson, J. (ed.) and Dennis, A. 1986. *The Story of Mount Cook National Park. A handbook to help you enjoy the Park*. Department of Lands and Survey, Christchurch.

Thom, D. 1987. *Heritage - The Parks of the People*. Lansdowne Press, Auckland.

Wilson, H. D. 1976. *The Vegetation of Mount Cook National Park, New Zealand*. National Parks Authority Scientific Series Number 1. National Parks Authority, Wellington.

Wilson, H.D. 1996. *The Wild Plants of Mount Cook National Park*. Manuka and Caxton Press, Christchurch.

2 Management Issues and Objectives

2.1 MANAGEMENT ISSUES

Past management experience within the Park and public comments received prior to the preparation of this Plan, indicate that there are a number of issues that this Plan has to address in order to provide some management direction. The current major issues facing the management of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park are outlined below. There are many other issues for the Park that also need to be addressed. These are included in the *Explanation* to the relevant policies in Part Four of this Plan.

2.1.1 Preservation and Use

The National Park is subject to two potentially conflicting sets of values. One arises from the status of national parks (and the larger nature and national reserves) as the icons of New Zealand's protected areas. Aoraki/Mount Cook is part of a world heritage area. The National Park is under the mantle of Aoraki with its Tōpuni. This combination justifiably deserves respect. Indeed it is implicit that the nation expects a greater degree of care in the interactions of people and their activities with this Park's natural, historic and cultural values than in most other areas managed by the Department. Conversely, the other set of values arises from the increased pressure for use and development. This is mostly commercial in nature and at times unrelated to visitor appreciation or preservation of the Park - for example the use of the Park and State Highway 80 adjoining the Park as a setting for some advertising, filming and sports events.

This issue of how preservation and use should inter-relate is in part inherent within the National Parks Act 1980. The Act requires that parks be managed primarily for the purpose of preserving their natural state and also for public entry and access to enable inspiration, enjoyment, recreation and other benefits. Situations do arise where these aims are at odds. The purpose of this Plan is to facilitate the resolution of this tension.

Much of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is physically self-preserving, in the sense that the harsh and unstable environment places its own limits on the degree and type of public use which can be undertaken - for example there are physical limits on aircraft landing and hut sites. Preserving the Park's spiritual values, for both Ngāi Tahu and all New Zealanders who treasure the Park, is a harder management task. Some areas of the Park, especially in the Hooker and Tasman Valleys, are more accessible and are already experiencing visitor pressures. The *New Zealand Tourism Strategy 2010* predicts a national average growth rate for tourist numbers of 4.5% per annum for the period 2000-2010. Growth at Aoraki/Mount Cook is known to be higher than this in recent years (in excess of 30% for some Village visitor groups during 2002/2003). Within the ten-year life of this management plan the current 20,000 visits per annum to Hooker Lake could increase to between 30,000 to 50,000 visits per annum.

Recent studies in New Zealand (see Kearsley et al, 1998, 1999 & 2001) have looked at front-country and backcountry recreational use. The effect of large increases in numbers of overseas visitors, in addition to generating front-country physical and social impacts, is leading to displacement of existing recreational use into and within backcountry areas, with resultant crowding and other perceived impacts.

The *Mount Cook National Park Management Plan* (1989) recommended an amenities area under section 15 National Parks Act for the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village. This amenities area status (gazetted in July 1999) acknowledges that for the Village there will be an amenities and services emphasis, unlike the preservation emphasis for the balance of the Park, although the World Heritage Area status still applies. The 1989 Plan also emphasised retaining the Godley Valley as a more isolated and less developed part of the Park. The 1990 advent of the Hooker-Landsborough Wilderness Area just outside the Park south-west of the Mueller Valley requires consideration of compatible management within the Park adjoining the wilderness area.

2.1.2 Aircraft Use

Contentious issues surrounding aircraft use include how much aircraft use is desirable, what types of aircraft should be involved, the choice of landing sites and over-flying of the Park by aircraft based outside the Park.

Many of the arguments for and against aircraft use are similar to those between preservation and use of the Park (see 2.1.1). The biggest complaint raised against aircraft is the noise they generate in an otherwise largely undisturbed mountain environment.

Aircraft operations within the Park are a long-standing service for park users but they do need control to minimise the adverse effects of their operations.

The issue of aircraft type (fixed-wing verses rotary-wing) has drawn public comment. Both types have operational and park management advantages and disadvantages and consideration of their relative use needs to be based on their effects, not just aircraft type.

2.1.3 Aoraki/Mount Cook Village

The retention and further development of Aoraki/Mount Cook Village within the National Park is an old issue. It harks back to the pre-National Park establishment of The Hermitage and the subsequent development of services and other accommodation facilities that have led to today's multi-million dollar investment in the Village.

Aoraki/Mount Cook Village is acknowledged as being at risk from flooding. Protection works have recently (1999) been upgraded to reduce risk levels to those compatible with the requirements of the Building Act 1991 and allowable building areas defined.

The Village has seen much modification from its natural state and currently does need some refurbishment.

As noted in 2.1.1, an amenities area has recently been gazetted over the Village. There is now significant investment in the Village; flood protection works are in place and long-term concessions exist for many of the facilities. The primary Village

management issue is how the Village should develop within the limits of the amenities area site and geotechnic constraints, while maintaining National Park and World Heritage Area values, under the gaze of Aoraki/Mount Cook.

This management plan needs to consolidate former Village planning processes and provide a future direction.

2.1.4 Huts

The number and size of the huts within the National Park and the facilities within them, are issues increasingly dependent on operating costs, hut siting, and hut-user safety. The Department however, is mindful of its responsibility to foster recreational use. Huts are publicly-owned and operated by the Department, climbing clubs and a concessionaire, with concessionaire-group use of huts being an issue. A national review of huts and other visitor facilities managed by the Department is currently underway and the future of Park huts needs to be considered in this wider context. More specifically, Hooker Hut is under debate regarding its future location and function.

2.1.5 Introduced Plants

A number of plants introduced to the Park in the past are now considered undesirable (e.g. Russell lupins and cherry trees), although a few (e.g. old homestead site trees) may now have historical significance. National park legislation requires that, as far as possible, all introduced plants shall be exterminated, except where the New Zealand Conservation Authority otherwise determines.

For some plants, extermination is probably impossible and it is therefore necessary to determine what is feasible in the context of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. For many plants it may only be possible to put in sufficient resources and effort to control and prevent the spread of their population.

2.1.6 Park Boundary Changes

While a management plan cannot action changes to national park boundaries (see the process under section 8 of the National Parks Act) it can foreshadow such changes for consideration.

Tenure review of crown pastoral leases adjoining the National Park are under action or anticipated and will result in additional, adjoining conservation lands. The review process can also consider unoccupied Crown land such as the Tasman riverbed. Proposals for Park extensions and/or boundary rationalisation could follow.

Part of the Birch Hill Flats lying within the Park has been grazed and an additional Birch Hill Flats area was removed from the Park in the 1970s for staff accommodation development, but is no longer required. Both these areas need their future reconsidered.

2.1.7 Concessions Management

Since the 1989 plan, changes in concessions management resulting from Part IIIB Conservation Act have been extensive in aspects such as concession application and

processing requirements. A better understanding of the Commerce Act 1986 rules out some 1989 plan provisions that potentially restrict trade competition.

The growth and variety of concessionaire activity in recent years has been considerable and some of the issues that have arisen and need to be addressed in this plan include:

- managing the cumulative effects of multiple concessionaire activities;
- identifying and protecting visitor management settings within the Park;
- addressing Ngāi Tahu cultural concerns;
- the effects between user groups (e.g. aircraft noise on ground-based visitors);
- recognising the 'icon' status of the National Park;
- determining appropriate and inappropriate activities within the Park and avoiding the adverse effects of activities that do not clearly relate to the purposes for national parks;
- recognising and making use of the opportunities presented by concessionaire activities to increase visitor understanding of the preservation ethic of national parks.

2.2 MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES

The management philosophy for all national parks in New Zealand is set out in Section 4 of the National Parks Act 1980 (refer to section 1.2.1).

These objectives apply to the whole of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, except for the amenities area at Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.

2.2.1 Primary Objectives

Having regard to the National Parks Act 1980, the primary objectives of this management plan are:

Objective 1

To preserve in perpetuity in their natural state, as far as possible, the landscapes, indigenous ecosystems and natural features of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park.

Objective 2

To preserve for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the public, the character of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park as a natural area of exceptional beauty, geological and ecological significance and biological diversity, to the extent that this is consistent with Objective 1.

Objective 3

To give effect to the principles of the Tiriti o Waitangi/Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that the provisions of the National Parks Act 1980 are clearly not inconsistent with them.

Explanation

1. National parks are to be administered and maintained so as to preserve them in perpetuity in their natural state, as far as possible. The achievement of the primary objective will see the Park managed to protect its distinctive scenery, ecological systems, natural features and native plants and animals, the preservation of which is in the national interest.

2. Subject to the provisions of the Act and any conditions or restrictions as may be necessary for the preservation of the native plants and animals or for the general welfare of the Park or park visitors, the public shall have freedom of access to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. This enables the public to enjoy the splendour of the Park while ensuring that the Park's natural, historic and cultural values are protected.

3. Section 4 of the Conservation Act requires the Department to interpret and administer that Act to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that the provisions of the Conservation Act 1987 are not clearly inconsistent with those principles. Case law has established that section 4 applies to the Acts

listed in the First Schedule to the Conservation Act 1987. The National Parks Act 1980 is one such Act. The Department is also implementing the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu *Deed of Settlement* as they relate to the Park and its management. This helps to ensure that the values of significance to Ngāi Tahu are protected in the day-to-day management of the Park.

2.2.2 Additional Objectives

The following additional objectives flow from the primary objectives. The Department seeks to achieve these objectives in so far as they are compatible with the primary objectives above:

1. To preserve the Park's heritage of places, artefacts and archaeological sites;
2. To exterminate all introduced plant and animal pests in the Park, as far as possible;
3. To manage the Park in such a way that its World Heritage Area status is preserved;
4. To ensure any commercial use within the Park is compatible with the primary objectives in 2.2.1.

Explanation

Change is inevitable during the ten-year time frame of this Plan. It is not possible to foresee all potential changes and pressures that the Park may experience during this time. The purpose of these additional objectives is therefore more general than the primary objectives and is to steer the future management of the Park where policies may lack sufficient or up-to-date information. These objectives should therefore be used as a management guide together with policies, where relevant.

3 Treaty of Waitangi

3.1 INTRODUCTION

This section sits in front of the other policy sections of the management plan, in recognition of the Treaty of Waitangi relationship between the Crown, through the Department, and Ngāi Tahu. The management of the Park's values must be from the bi-cultural perspective, in accordance with the Crown's recognition of the Treaty.

3.1.1 Treaty Relationship

Policy

3.1.1

To manage Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park in a manner that gives effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that the provisions of the National Parks Act 1980, *Deed of Settlement* 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act are not clearly inconsistent with the principles of the Treaty.

Explanation

3.1.1 - Section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987 requires the National Parks Act 1980 to be interpreted and administered to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, at least to the extent that the provisions of the National Parks Act 1980 are not clearly inconsistent with the principles (*Ngāi Tahu Māori Trust Board v Director-General of Conservation* [1995] 3NZLR 553, 558, Lines 33-35).

The Department's guiding principles in regard to the Treaty of Waitangi and its principles are set out in Appendix F. The *Deed of Settlement* 1997 and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 also provide specific obligations for the Department. These specific obligations are noted, where relevant, in policies, explanations and methods throughout this Management Plan. The Method below, which relates to Section 4 of the Conservation Act, applies throughout the Plan, but to avoid repetition is listed once below.

The Department recognises the mana and tākata whenua status of Ngāi Tahu, whose rohe (tribal region) includes the Park and ensures where appropriate, that Ngāi Tahu are actively involved in the protection of their taonga within the Park. Consultation from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect iwi interests is essential. It is important to establish and maintain a close relationship with Ngāi Tahu and ensure that their concerns are heard and taken into account. The Department seeks to achieve this through a range of mechanisms, examples of which include consultation with Ngāi Tahu on the Department's annual business plan and regular Rōpū Kaitiaki meetings with tākata whenua (see 1.3.2).

Consultation with Ngāi Tahu will be principally with the tākata whenua. In addition, the Department is required to consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the tribal body of Ngāi Tahu, over any *Deed of Settlement* related matters.

Significant values have been identified and have been addressed through specific policies and methods of this plan.

Method

3.1.1

The Department will actively consult and work with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values.

4 Park Policies

The policies that follow have been prepared in terms of the National Parks Act 1980, the General Policy for National Parks 1983, other legislation listed in section 1.2 and the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy*. The General Policy has been applied and where necessary, its application to Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park has been specified, expanded or interpreted.

Whilst individual policies may be read in isolation, it is necessary to read them together with their associated method statements and within the context of the Plan as a whole to gain a comprehensive understanding and to note that all policies in this Plan will be implemented and applied consistently with all other policies in the Plan.

The following conventions, with respect to the Department implementing policies or methods, have been used within this Plan:

- policies or methods where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making state that a particular action or actions 'will' be undertaken;
- policies or methods that provide for strong guidance on decision-making, without diminishing the roles of the Minister and other decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions 'should' be undertaken; and
- policies or methods specifically intended to allow flexibility in decision-making state that a particular action or actions 'may' be undertaken.

4.1 HERITAGE PROTECTION

4.1.1 Indigenous Plants and Animals

Policies

4.1.1(a)

To preserve indigenous plants and animals of the Park, as far as possible, in their natural state.

4.1.1(b)

To take special measures to protect threatened plants and animals.

4.1.1(c)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with taonga species and when managing indigenous plants and animals have particular regard to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for freshwater fisheries and culling of species and to the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.1.1(a) - Preservation of indigenous (native) plants and animals, as far as possible, except where the New Zealand Conservation Authority otherwise determines, is a requirement of the National Parks Act 1980 (Section 4(2)(b)). Any cutting, destruction or taking of plants is an offence (Section 60(1)(d)), unless the approval of the Minister of Conservation has been obtained in advance. Any disturbance, trapping, taking, hunting or killing of indigenous fauna requires the approval of the Minister of Conservation and the Director-General of Conservation, in terms of the requirements of both Section 5 National Parks Act 1980 and Section 53(1) Wildlife Act 1953 respectively. Indigenous fauna includes bird, fish, reptile and invertebrate life.

The indigenous plants, vegetation and animals of the Park are well described in Dennis and Potton (1984) and in Wilson (1976 and 1996). The species and vegetation are typical of the eastern Southern Alps/Kā Tiritiri o te Moana and threatened species found in the Park are not confined to it. The Park however, does have the distinctive aspect of better-preserved vegetation extending into the high valleys, relative to areas outside the Park. This preservation is due to a combination of earlier cessation of stock grazing and burning, stronger action to protect the area (see 1.3.4.1), and more rigorous wild animal control. Ongoing preservation is inherent throughout the Plan - for example through avoiding visitor pressure on the east Hooker Valley vegetation, better 4WD vehicle control in the Godley Valley and protecting indigenous vegetation in Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.

Preservation cannot be an absolute. Sometimes vegetation needs to be cut, such as along tracks or to provide a site for a public building. Also in the course of cutting vegetation or controlling or eradicating exotics (see 4.1.4 Introduced Plants), specimens of indigenous animals may become casualties. Particular care needs to be

used when undertaking these activities within the Park. Adverse effects on native plants and habitats should be avoided. Consent must be sought where applicable, in terms of sections 5(1) and 5(2) National Parks Act and the Wildlife Act 1953.

To a large extent, the survival of species of indigenous plants and animals depends upon the good health of their habitats (see 4.1.4 Introduced Plants, 4.1.5 Introduced Animals and Domestic Animals, 4.1.3 Water, Snow, Ice and Riverbeds).

The Department has rated the Tasman riverbed as a wildlife habitat of very high value and national importance for braided river bird and invertebrate species. It will be an aim of Park management that the wildlife value of this area is retained. The Tasman riverbed outside of the Park is one of the areas identified for consideration as a national park addition (see 4.1.9 Boundaries and Land Additions).

The Department is confident that grazing will soon cease on the Birch Hill Flats (see 4.3.8 Grazing). Monitoring of the vegetation response to this is desirable to identify any management action needed regarding introduced grass competing with native species.

For the collection or cutting of indigenous species as part of an approved programme of scientific research see 4.3.11 Research.

Ngāi Tahu traditional use of indigenous plants and animals is specifically addressed in policy 4.3.1 of this Plan.

4.1.1(b) – Within the Park and its immediate vicinity one plant species *Olearia fimbriata* has been identified (Molloy et al, 2001) as in ‘serious decline’; two plant species, *Ranunculus grahamii* (an alpine buttercup) and *Ranunculus godleyanus* (yellow mountain buttercup) are ‘range restricted’; and *Epilobium purpuratum* (a willow herb) is ‘sparse’.

Olearia fimbriata is under active management (monitoring, possum control, plant propagation); the other plant species are being monitored.

Within, but not confined to the Park, the birds kea and New Zealand falcon/karearea are ‘nationally endangered’ and rock wren is ‘nationally vulnerable’. Periodically within or near the Park black stilt/kaki is ‘nationally critical’; wrybill/ngutu-pare are ‘nationally vulnerable’; and black-fronted tern/tarapirohe are ‘in serious decline’. Management of these birds is in accordance with national priorities, as set out in section 5.2.6 Indigenous Species in the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000). Black stilt/kaki have a threatened species recovery plan to achieve a population recovery and kea have a management strategy (Grant, 1993), primarily focused on kea and human interactions to reduce disruptions to kea behaviour.

4.1.1(c) - Ngāi Tahu has a cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association with indigenous plants and animals. The Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 recognises this relationship in sections 287 to 296 “Taonga species”. Schedules 97 and 98 of the Act list those indigenous plants and animals that were included in the settlement as taonga species (see Appendix E).

Under section 293 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Minister of Conservation is required, with respect to taonga species, including those species subject to recovery plans or species recovery groups, to advise Ngāi Tahu in advance of any reviews or preparations of statutory or non-statutory management

documents. The Minister is required to consult and have particular regard to the views of Ngāi Tahu when making policy decisions concerning the protection, management or conservation of taonga species.

Under section 294 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Director-General of Conservation, in respect of any taonga species that is or becomes subject to a recovery plan or species recovery group, is required to provide Ngāi Tahu with copies of the proceedings and publications relating to the species. The Director-General is required to consult with and have particular regard to the views of Ngāi Tahu when making policy decisions concerning the protection, management or conservation of all taonga species subject to a species recovery group. The Director-General is also required to provide Ngāi Tahu with an opportunity to nominate a person to join a species recovery group for certain species.

Section 304 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 states the specific obligations for consultation with Ngāi Tahu regarding taonga fish species, as set out in schedule 98 of the Act. The Freshwater Fisheries Protocol also applies. Refer to Appendix D for this Protocol.

In addition to these provisions, there are other species that are of special significance to Ngāi Tahu that may not be included in schedule 97 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. The Department should, in accordance with section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987, where appropriate and to the fullest extent practicable, take active steps to protect the interests of Ngāi Tahu in these other species.

The Protocols deal, for example, with the management of freshwater fisheries, culling of species and various matters under the Resource Management Act 1991 that are likely to be relevant when managing indigenous plants and animals. Refer to Appendix D for these Protocols.

The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki, under sections 212 – 213 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, also applies. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views in relation to any programme to identify and protect indigenous plants or wildlife within the Tōpuni area.

Methods

4.1.1(a)

1. Indigenous plants that have been grown from seed or cuttings collected in the Park and its vicinity by Park staff may be planted in the Park (see 4.1.2 Landscape Management).

2. Prior to grazing ceasing on the Birch Hill Flats an environmental monitoring programme will be established. This will include an assessment of changes to native vegetation composition and diversity, from current baseline studies. This will provide factual information to assess the impacts of grazing in the Park.

4.1.1(b)

1. Consent may be granted for the trimming or cutting of indigenous vegetation which is endangering the survival chances of threatened species of flora and fauna, provided that environmental protection procedures have been complied with (see 4.1.10 Environmental Protection).
2. Records will be kept of the distribution of threatened plants and animals, so that changes can be monitored and the location of populations of such species can be avoided in the provision of public facilities and services.
3. Threatened species management will be undertaken in accordance with national priorities.

4.1.1(c)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values in relation to indigenous plants and animals. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act mentioned in policy 4.1.1(c).

4.1.2 Landscape Management

Policies

4.1.2(a)

To preserve the natural landscapes of the Park as far as possible, including avoiding interference with natural processes.

4.1.2(b)

To design and locate facilities to minimise their impact on the landscape and apply landscape restoration techniques where necessary to land that has been damaged during the provision of facilities and services.

4.1.2(c)

To recognise and restore where practicable the State Highway and Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport Park entranceway landscapes.

Explanation

4.1.2(a) - The National Park is renowned for its high quality alpine and high country scenery. Most of this can be preserved with indirect management to prevent deterioration (see 4.1.4 Introduced Plants, 4.1.5 Introduced Animals and Domestic Animals, 4.1.8 Fire Control).

4.1.2(b) - Active management of landscapes is usually needed only where there are intrusions in the natural scenery in the form of facilities and services for the use and enjoyment of the Park. Sensitive siting, design and landscape construction can avoid many of the potential natural landscape impacts.

4.1.2(c) – Both the State Highway approach into the Park and aspects of the surrounds of the Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport have introduced features (fences, Birch Hill airstrip shelter structure and mown area, riverbank-protection willows, Unwin Hut complex, airport carpark, vehicle tracks and old earthworks) that adversely affect the Park's entranceway landscapes. It is desirable to remove or, in the case of at least Unwin Hut and the airport carpark, to mitigate the effects of these features and allow natural processes to dominate where possible.

Methods

4.1.2(b)

1. The need for natural landscape modification and landscape restoration will be kept to a minimum by placing an initial emphasis on the justification, appropriate siting and design of facilities (see 4.3.9 New and Existing Buildings).

2. Facility design will seek to blend in and reduce the impact of facilities on natural landscapes. Exceptions to this may apply for some high altitude huts and bivouacs that may need to be clearly visible to effectively perform their function of providing shelter.

3. Where facility design involves earthworks, then, as well as restoring an appropriate vegetation cover to disturbed areas, the earthworks will be designed so as not to increase the potential for erosion or for debris to obstruct watercourses. Revegetation may include fertilising and the planting out of plants that have been grown elsewhere from seed or cuttings collected in the Park and its vicinity. Any landscape restoration activities have to be in accordance with the 4.1.1 Indigenous Plants and Animals policies. For indigenous seed and cutting collection for propagation purposes, also see 4.1.1.

4. Attention to mitigating landscape impacts will be a condition of concessions where relevant, to ensure a common standard of quality of Park landscapes.

4.1.3 Water, Snow, Ice and Riverbeds.

Policies

4.1.3(a)

To manage the Park so that as far as possible the quantity and quality of the waters, glaciers and snowfields and the condition of the water channels are maintained in a natural state.

4.1.3(b)

To manage the Park's waters and, in particular, the Aoraki Tōpuni area and the waters flowing from the area, so that as far as possible, the mauri of the waters for Ngāi Tahu is protected.

Explanation

4.1.3(a) - The attraction of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park is in part dependent on the pristine nature of its snowfields, glaciers, rivers and streams. Every effort needs to be made to preserve that condition.

Particular attention needs to be paid to Glencoe Stream and Black Birch Stream above the Village, as these streams provide the water supply for the Village (see 6.2.9 Services).

Maintaining the natural state cannot be absolute, as this would prevent a range of recreational activities and protection works for facilities, which are of benefit to public use and enjoyment of the Park.

For the use of waters for boating, see 4.2.2 Recreational Activities.

4.1.3(b) - For Ngāi Tahu, the snow and ice on Aoraki and the surrounding tipuna mountain and the waters that flow from them, have special significance, a mauri (see 1.3.2). Activities such as bathing or washing in the waters, waste water disposal, or defecating on the mountain, adversely affect Ngāi Tahu values.

Methods

4.1.3(a)

1. The limited use of water, snow and ice is appropriate where this is of direct benefit to approved facilities and services in the Park. Guidelines on potability which are in compliance with relevant legislation will be followed and advice obtained as required.

2. Facilities for public use in the catchments of the Glencoe and Black Birch Streams above the water supply abstraction points will only be appropriate where there is no risk of contamination of the water supply.

3. Water channels will be kept free and unrestricted, but may have road bridges or road culverts, or have stopbanks to direct water flows away from approved facilities and services. As a general rule, protection works must be appropriate to satisfy the requirements of legislation dealing with

buildings in terms of the probability of damage to them, with higher levels of probability being acceptable for roads, pathways and tracks.

4. Consultation and liaison with Environment Canterbury, which has statutory responsibilities in the Park relating to soil conservation and water management, will be maintained.

4.1.3(b)

1. The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values in relation to waterways. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act mentioned in policy 4.1.3(b).

2. Public facilities will be sited, designed or even removed and visitor information provided, so that inappropriate use of Tōpuni area source waterways is discouraged.

3. Human waste, particularly but not only within the Tōpuni area, will be managed through the provisions in 4.2.10 Waste Disposal.

4.1.4 Introduced Plants

Policies

4.1.4(a)

To exterminate or control introduced plants in the Park in accordance with national plans, regional pest management strategies, statutory management documents, guidelines and acceptable principles of introduced plant control, in so far as these are consistent with the objectives and policies of this plan.

4.1.4(b)

To conduct regular introduced plant surveillance within the Park.

4.1.4(c)

To consider exceptions to extermination or control programmes:

- *where introduced plants are providing a significant and effective soil conservation or water management function, or*
- *where they are of proven historical significance, or*
- *for lawns within the Village amenities area that are a component of an accepted landscape design.*

4.1.4(d)

To permit herbicide use and advocate for the use of biological control organisms where no effective or efficient alternatives are available, subject to strict controls for the protection of indigenous plants, fauna and waterways and for the safety of people.

4.1.4(e)

To actively seek to prevent the introduction or further spread of introduced plants in the Park.

4.1.4(f)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu, when eradicating pests or other introduced species, as expressed in the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.1.4(a) - Over 130 introduced plants have been identified in the Park and more may exist undiscovered. They range from trees such as larch, birch, cherry and spruce, through Russell lupin, sweet briar and broom, to introduced grasses and herbs. The majority are found on the Tasman and Hooker valley floors.

Extermination of introduced plants as far as possible, except where the Authority otherwise determines, is a requirement of the National Parks Act 1980 (Section 4(2)(b)).

Given limits on the resources available, extermination has to be seen as a long-term or unrealistic goal for many introduced plant species (e.g. browntop), with control of the species as the shorter-term goal, again where it is realistic.

The *Department of Conservation Strategic Plan for Managing Invasive Weeds* (Owen, 1998) describes from a national perspective the Department's long term approach to protect native species and natural communities from threats posed by invasive weeds (introduced plants). It applies across all lands administered by the Department. Within this national context an introduced plant in a national park may not gain priority for extermination or control compared with plants in other areas.

In general, control is to confine populations and prevent further spreading. Two processes exist to identify species for control.

Environment Canterbury has identified seven introduced plants in the park as warranting control regimes, in terms of the *Regional Pest Management Strategy* (1998). Four plants (broom, gorse, ragwort, nodding thistle) are containment control plant pests and three (heather, St John's wort, sweetbrier) surveillance control plant pests. Broom and gorse are being contained.

In terms of the Department's priorities (see Owen 1998) one introduced plant not included in the *Regional Pest Management Strategy* (1998), is Russell lupin, which is subject to an extensive control programme by the Department to avoid its spread into the Tasman riverbed. Russell lupin is an aggressive weed with the ability to extensively damage braided riverbed habitats and their fauna and flora. Other Departmental priority control plants are cherry trees, heather and wilding pines and larch.

Control of the widespread introduced grass, brown-top, is not possible.

4.1.4(b)

Introduced plant surveillance is essential if such species are to be effectively controlled. Particular sites for surveillance are in and adjacent to the Village, along SH80 and other roads and on riverbeds. Particular introduced plants to look for are identified in the field guide "*Wicked Weeds to watch out for... in Aoraki/Mount Cook Area*" (2002).

4.1.4(c) – In respect of the first and second bullet points there are some plants within the Park that may qualify. In respect of the third bullet point, within the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village some areas of introduced plants may be so extensive that their removal at a single stroke would be counterproductive for the establishment of new plants or for the transitional retention of a pleasant Village environment. Some of the larch and silver birch trees fit into this latter category. For these reasons, even though extermination is feasible, a phasing-out programme combined with replacement planting of indigenous plants is more appropriate. Lawns containing introduced grass species may be an integral part of landscape design (see 6.1.2 Landscape Management).

The introduction or retention of introduced plants within the Park requires the approval of the New Zealand Conservation Authority, in accordance with section 4(2)(b) of the National Parks Act.

4.1.4(d)

Herbicide or biological control organism use will be in accordance with regional rules, any other statutory requirements, the Agrichemical Users Code of Practice 1995 and, for biological organisms, the procedures in section 5A National Parks Act 1980.

4.1.4(e)

Exterminating or controlling introduced plants within the Park is a significant challenge faced by Park managers. It is therefore essential that every effort be reasonably made to prevent the introduction or further spread of plants in the first instance. Such efforts should include, but will not be limited to:

- the extermination or control of introduced plants as identified in policies 4.1.4(a) and (b);
- ensuring all earthmoving machinery and/or equipment is free from plant material prior to entry into the park. Exceptions to this should only include emergency works as defined under the Resource Management Act 1991;
- ensuring the necessary conditions are placed on concessionaires to prevent the introduction or spread of plants;
- ongoing liaison and consultation with Environment Canterbury, the Commissioner of Crown Lands, adjoining lessees and landowners, and Transit New Zealand.

4.1.4(f) - The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki, under sections 212 – 213 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, applies here. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views in relation to any programme to eradicate pests or other introduced species within the Tōpuni area.

Methods

4.1.4(a,b &c)

Introduced plants will be classified into four categories:

- those to be exterminated;
- those to be actively controlled;
- those to be monitored;
- those not subject to any extermination or control programme because of special circumstances.

4.1.4(a)

1. Generally a strategy of extermination will be applied:

- where the introduced plants are, in terms of the Regional Pest Management Strategy, total or progressive control plants for which Environment Canterbury has approved a programme of eradication;
- To other introduced plants where:
 - extermination will not have any long-term harmful effects on indigenous species;
 - the introduced plants endanger the habitat and survival of indigenous species, including those out of the Park where not exterminating the plant in the Park would undermine its removal elsewhere (e.g. Russell lupin);
 - extermination will not cause further disturbance that would promote further infestation;
 - priority for extermination meets criteria in Owen (1998).

2. Plants to be actively controlled will be those where:

- the introduced plants, in terms of the Regional Pest Management Strategy, are containment control plants for which Environment Canterbury has approved a programme of control;
- other introduced plants where attempts at extermination could promote further infestation;
- priority for control meets criteria in Owen (1998).

3. Plants that will be monitored only will be those which:

- are not total, progressive or containment control plants in terms of the Regional Pest Management Strategy;
- do not meet extermination or control criteria in Owen (1998);
- are well-established;
- are not known to pose a threat to the environmental values of the Park;
- are subject to severe restraints hindering eradication and control.

4. Different methods of control will apply with different species and in different parts of the Park. The various methods, including herbicide spraying, will be used only after a close examination of the consequences for indigenous fauna and flora, for visitors and residents, for water quality and for erosion control. Special precautions will be adopted where necessary and consents under the Resource Management Act 1991 sought where required.

5. Planting of indigenous plants may be used as an introduced plant control measure (see 4.1.1 Indigenous Plants and Animals, 4.1.2 Landscape Management). Some problems with introduced plants can be avoided by placing emphasis on the maintenance of a healthy and competitive indigenous plant cover.

4.1.4(c)

Special circumstances justifying neither extermination nor control measures may apply for:

- the larches, Douglas firs and pines of confirmed historical significance associated with the first Hermitage hotel site at White Horse Hill and poplars and macrocarpa at the Birch Hill homestead sites (see 4.1.6 Historic Resources), but not to wilding seedlings from these trees, nor to the trees themselves if they are a significant problem seed source;
- lawns that are a component of an accepted landscape design;
- willow trees serving an essential river control function along the Tasman River provided they are non-spreading species and cannot be replaced with suitable indigenous species.

4.1.4(f)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values in relation to introduced plant extermination or control within the Aoraki Tōpuni area. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act mentioned in policy 4.1.4(f).

4.1.5 Introduced Fauna and Domestic Animals

Policies

4.1.5(a)

To exterminate or control introduced fauna in and adjacent to the Park in accordance with national plans, regional pest management strategies, policies, guidelines and acceptable principles of animal pest control, in so far as these are consistent with the objectives and policies of this plan.

4.1.5(b)

To exterminate thar within, and actively control thar adjoining the Park.

4.1.5(c)

Domestic animals should be excluded from the Park, subject to the Control of Dogs provisions in Part VA of the National Parks Act.

4.1.5(d)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngäi Tahu, when eradicating pests or other introduced species, as expressed in the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.1.5(a) & (b) - The National Parks Act 1980 (Section 4(2)(b) requires extermination of introduced fauna as far as possible, as reaffirmed by Policy 9.4 of the *General Policy for National Parks* 1983. However, Policy 9.4 also recognises the technical difficulty of achieving this and aims for introduced fauna reduction to a level the indigenous flora and fauna can tolerate.

Because of the high mobility of most introduced fauna, lasting extermination in the Park is difficult if pursued in isolation from measures in the surrounding region. Resources do not at present or in the foreseeable future, permit extermination over a wider region. Control is therefore seen as the only feasible alternative during the life of this plan.

Introduced fauna includes a variety of species and classifications with different agencies responsible for control under several statutes:

- the Department of Conservation has the overall responsibility for the control of wild animals (deer, thar, chamois and possums in the case of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park) and for helicopter hunting by virtue of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. The Himalayan Thar Control Plan (1993) governs thar control and sets a zero population density for the National Park above which the Department will intervene and commence thar control. Wild animal recovery within the Park requires a concession, as of 1 October 1999 (see 4.4.2 Concessions General and 4.4.3 Aircraft and Airports);

- Environment Canterbury has a responsibility for possums (on agricultural land), rabbits and hares under the Biosecurity Act 1993. Rabbits are declared pests within Council's *Regional Pest Management Strategy* (1998);
- the Central South Island Fish and Game Council is responsible for the management of introduced sports fish (Conservation Act 1987);
- the Department of Conservation and the Central South Island Fish and Game Council are jointly responsible for the management of introduced game birds (Wildlife Act 1953);
- the Department of Conservation is responsible for the extermination, as far as possible, of animals such as cats, rodents, hedgehogs and mustelids (stoats, ferrets and weasels), and for ensuring that domestic animals do not enter the Park (National Parks Act 1980). Farm livestock can be permitted in the Park under a formal concession arrangement.

Continued pressure on wild animal populations has brought them down to a low level. Hare, rabbit, cat, mice and mustelid populations are variable and need to be closely monitored as they can increase rapidly. Introduced fish and game bird populations are not significant.

Although aircraft can adversely affect the experience of Park visitors, aircraft access into Liebig Hut should be permitted, as this facility is located within the thar feral range and thar come into the Park over the adjoining Liebig Range. This recognises that recreational hunting can assist with the Department's target of zero thar within the Park. Any aircraft access will be conditional, however, on the hunting being considered as an animal control measure, not as trophy hunting. Although trophy animals may be gained all thar seen should be shot.

4.1.5(c) – Domestic animals (this includes all pets) have the potential to adversely affect indigenous flora and fauna and to create conflict with other park users. Exclusion is necessary to ensure that no animals are left uncontrolled. This does not include stock permitted under grazing licenses in accordance with policy 4.3.8.

If stray domestic animals are found within the Park every attempt will be made to identify the owner and have the animals removed. If animals are found within the Park the animals may be dealt with as trespassing animals, in accordance with section 62 of the National Parks Act 1980. For dogs, the seizure and other provisions of Part VA of the National Parks Act apply.

This policy does not preclude the use of dogs for police, park management, customs or search and rescue purposes, or guide dogs used by the blind, or companion dogs, all in accordance with Section 56E of the National Parks Act 1980. Any other use of dogs, including farm dogs for stock management within any grazing area, requires a dog control permit in accordance with Section 56B of the Act.

The use of horses or other ridden or pack animals within the Park is not appropriate because of their ability to pug tracks, damage vegetation, spread noxious weeds and create conflict with other park users.

For recreational hunting see 4.2.2 Recreational Activities. For guided hunting see 4.2.4 Guiding.

For farm livestock grazing, see 4.3.8 Grazing.

4.1.5(d) - The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki, under sections 212 – 213 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, applies here. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views in relation to any programme to eradicate pests or other introduced species within the Tōpuni area.

Methods

4.1.5(a) & (b)

1. Support continued pressure on wild animal populations by all available means, including recreational and commercial hunting and Department hunting operations.
2. Process concessions for wild animal recovery operations.
3. Prepare and action a control plan for hares, rabbits, cats, rodents and mustelids in the Park, taking into account the *Regional Pest Management Strategy* in respect to rabbits. Because many of these animals will need to be controlled near populated areas, the control plan will pay particular attention to control methods that are consistent with public safety. Particular attention will also be paid to methods of control that minimise the disturbance or destruction of indigenous plants and animals (see 4.1.1 Indigenous Plants and Animals).
4. Support continued pressure on wild animal populations on land adjoining the Park to keep the potential for re-infestation of the Park to a minimum.
5. Encourage recreational hunting of thar through permitting aircraft access to the Liebig Hut, provided that shooters undertake to shoot all thar seen and report their kills.

4.1.5(d)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values, in relation to introduced fauna extermination or control within the Aoraki Tōpuni area. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act mentioned in policy 4.1.5(d).

4.1.6 Historic Resources and Memorials

Policies

4.1.6(a)

To preserve archaeological and historic objects and sites located within the Park.

4.1.6(b)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance, and give effect to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for historic resources.

4.1.6(c)

Additional memorials of a monument-type should not be permitted except where the historical association of the site, individual or event is of exceptional importance. Plaques on existing monuments may be permitted to record ongoing associations with the monument's original purpose.

4.1.6(d)

To discourage the spreading of deceased persons' ashes, especially where this may affect the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni area or the waters flowing from that area.

4.1.6(e)

To permit plaques on Park facilities, to commemorate benefactors of the Park.

Explanation

4.1.6(a) - In managing sites and features of archaeological and historic interest within the Park the provisions of the relevant legislation and policy will be observed. Legislation, in addition to the National Parks Act 1980, includes the Conservation Act 1987, the Historic Places Act 1993, the Antiquities Act 1975 and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

At a national level the Department's historic policies include the *ICOMOS New Zealand Charter for the conservation of places of cultural heritage value* (1993), the *Historic Heritage Strategy* (1995) and the *Kaupapa Atawhai Strategy: Atawhai Ruamano Conservation 2000* (1997). These national policies are given effect to through the conservancy level policies in the *Historic Resources Strategy: Canterbury Conservancy* (1998) and the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000), as well as in the *Protocols on the Department of Conservation's Interaction with Ngāi Tahu on Specified Issues* (1999).

Known or potential historic sites within or immediately adjoining the Park are:

- foundations of the first Hermitage hotel at White Horse Hill, now marked by a plaque, with the associated introduced trees (see 4.1.4 Introduced Plants) and old walking tracks in vicinity;
- stone memorial (King Memorial) on the Hooker Valley Track commemorating the deaths of three climbers in 1914 and rededicated as a climbers' memorial in 1994;
- former hydro-electric power station site in Sawyer Stream;
- foundations of the first Ball Hut;
- Ball Hut old road and horse track remains;
- rubbish dumps associated with the first Hermitage hotel and the first Ball Hut;
- Sefton Bivi, recently replicated in accordance with a conservation plan;
- Hooker Hut (see also 4.2.7 Huts);
- the original Empress Hut (currently in storage for potential future display);
- other huts, subject to an assessment of their historic values being undertaken;
- Wakefield Track;
- "Wakefield Cottage", Sefton Staff Lodge and the carpenters' workshop, all behind The Hermitage and owned by the hotel owners;
- power generator shed within the Village (owned by The Hermitage owners and soon to be redundant);
- Birch Hill homestead/high country station site complex: includes introduced trees, (see 4.1.4 Introduced Plants), enclosures, fences, yards and Jimmy Lloyd's gravesite (Jacomb, 2002). (Note that most of these sites are within conservation area H37 018 that the Department is seeking to return to the Park – see 4.1.9 Boundaries and Land Additions);
- coach road causeway and bridge abutment, Woolshed Creek, Birch Hill;
- old stock-fence near Red Tarns Track.

In addition to these in situ historic sites, there are historic relics and information held by the Department, some of which are displayed in the visitor centre and may form the nucleus of historic displays and interpretation, possibly in a museum (see 6.2.7 Interpretation, Information and Park Administration). There is also a record of Māori artefacts being found within the Godley Valley (Andersen 1916, p39).

It is important that historic sites are identified before any work is undertaken that may affect them. If human bones are uncovered in the Park, work must stop immediately and the Police, the Department and local tākata whenua be notified. Ngāi Tahu has a kōiwi policy that specifically addresses the discovery of human bones.

Authority to modify an archaeological site is currently (2001) required from the New Zealand Historic Places Trust. It is a statutory requirement to have consent from the New Zealand Historic Places Trust for any works or actions that will modify an

archaeological site. For example, erecting fence posts within an archaeological site is likely to adversely impact on the site.

4.1.6(b) - The Protocol for historic resources acknowledges the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance. This Protocol is included in Appendix D. Ngāi Tahu may choose not to disclose, or disclose to a “silent file” system, the location of wāhi tapu sites to preserve the sacredness of these sites. Consultation will provide Ngāi Tahu with the opportunity to address proposed actions which may affect these areas and advise the Department about Ngāi Tahu policies which the Department should follow.

4.1.6(c) - The placing of memorials and monuments is not considered to be consistent with the preservation of the Park. Conservation Authority General Policy for National Parks 17.1 is that additional memorials of a monument-type will not be permitted, except where the historical association of the site, individual or event is of exceptional importance. An example of this would be the vesting of Aoraki/Mount Cook by the Crown to Ngāi Tahu and their subsequent gifting to the nation.

Where plaques are added to existing memorials it should be done in such a way and using such materials, so as not to diminish the historic integrity of the original memorial. It is recognised that within the lifetime of this Plan the King Memorial will be filled up with plaques under the method set out below and should further memorial plaques be requested, a site within the Village would be preferable.

4.1.6(d) - It is known that the spreading of deceased persons’ (climbers and others) ashes within the Park, including within the Aoraki Tōpuni area, does occur. This is offensive to Ngāi Tahu, particularly within the Tōpuni area and where the mauri of waters may be affected (see policy 4.1.3(b)). The issue is difficult to control other than through public education.

4.1.6(e) - Conservation Authority policy allows for benefactors of the Park where appropriate to be commemorated by means of plaques on facilities such as huts, shelters, or footbridges.

For display boards and information about historic and archaeological sites, see 4.2.9 Interpretation.

Methods

4.1.6(a)

1. Achieve the historic management objectives for specific sites in the Park according to significance and threat as prescribed by the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000) and *Historic Resources Strategy: Canterbury Conservancy* (1998).

2. Liaison will be maintained with The Hermitage owners and subsequent owners of the historic cottages within the Village, to encourage the protection of those buildings. The Department will encourage a full historic record to be made of the generator shed before the building is removed.

4.1.6(b)

Consult with tākata whenua and where appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect their values in relation to historic sites. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act mentioned in policy 4.1.6(b).

4.1.6(c)

1. Additional free-standing memorials will generally not be permitted. Exceptions may be made to cater for persons or events of national or international significance that are strongly associated with the Park.

2. Small memorial plaques commemorating climbers who have died within the Park may be attached to the eastern and northern sides of the base of the 'King Memorial', provided that no more than 25% of the memorial side rock-work is covered. Prior approval from the Area Manager, in accordance with the guidelines in Appendix G, must be obtained. A memorial book will be maintained by the Department at the Visitor Centre for those who have perished within the Park.

4.1.6(d)

In respect of the spreading of deceased persons' ashes, the Department will work with recreational climbers, mountain guides, the Aircraft User Group (see 4.3.3 Aircraft and Airports) and Ngāi Tahu to provide educational material and:

- actively discourage the practice within the Tōpuni area and in or near waters flowing from that area; and
- encourage people wanting to scatter ashes elsewhere in the Park to consult with tākata whenua as a matter of courtesy.

4.1.6(e)

Small plaques may, with appropriate consent, be erected on Park facilities to commemorate benefactors strongly associated with the particular facility, or as memorials to people or events strongly associated with the site of the facility. Plaques may also be used, with appropriate consent, to record the history of facilities on a site.

4.1.7 Natural Hazards

Policy

4.1.7(a)

To manage Park facilities to avoid increasing the threat from natural hazards.

4.1.7(b)

To manage the Park so that, except where public safety or amenities area facilities or State Highway 80 are threatened, nothing will be done which would alter the natural processes of avalanche, debris flow, flooding and erosion.

Explanation

Natural hazards, from snow avalanches and floods to debris flows, rock avalanches and erosion, are a distinct possibility throughout the Park at any time of the year. Insensitive development increases the threat from natural hazards and may accelerate erosion processes.

Knowledge is still being gained about natural hazards and the factors affecting them. Greater understanding will allow more informed management decisions to be made about such matters as hut and track siting and the impact of earthworks.

Extensive research has occurred in respect of natural hazards and Aoraki/Mount Cook Village (see 6.1.2 Waterways and Floodways) and *Geotechnical Report No 1...* (1997), Hurley (1996), and McSaveney (1995).

Methods

4.1.7(a) & (b)

1. Facilities should be located so as to minimise the risk of damage or loss (and thus minimise the risk to public safety) resulting from natural hazards. Research to assist with such decisions is encouraged (see 4.3.11 Research).

2. Existing facilities subject to natural hazards at unacceptable levels will be relocated to safer ground, as resources permit. Where no safer alternative is available the facility may be closed as a temporary measure during times when the risk is considered by the Area Manager to be unacceptably high.

3. On the issues of soil conservation and water management within the Park, as part of the Waitaki catchment, there will be close co-operation with Environment Canterbury on its statutory functions.

4. Except as part of the rehabilitation of disturbance resulting from visitor use (see 4.1.2 Landscape Management), re-vegetation or engineering programmes to prevent or control erosion are not considered to be necessary.

5. Earth-moving of eroded or avalanche materials should be permitted in Black Birch and Glencoe Streams and other waterways where facilities, such as water supplies, roads (including State Highway 80), stop banks, buildings and bridges would be threatened by erosion, flood or avalanche events. Earth-moving of eroded or avalanche material is allowed on Park roads and at other facilities that are to be retained for public use and enjoyment. Excavated material will be deposited on sites which, as far as possible, are geologically stable, minimise ecological and visual impacts and will not result in introduced plant spread.

4.1.8 Fire Control

Policy

4.1.8

To prevent or extinguish all fires within or threatening the Park, other than those permitted by the National Park Bylaws and that do not constitute a fire hazard.

Explanation

Fires, especially during warm dry north-westerly weather, are a major hazard not just for the Park, but also for adjoining land downwind. All fires, whether lit naturally, accidentally or deliberately, can seriously damage the Park environment. Any damaged area will take a long time to recover, as is shown in an area in the Liebig Range affected by fire in 1970. That fire was caused by an unprotected stove setting light to adjoining vegetation.

The lighting of fires is subject to strict controls set out in the Park bylaws (see Appendix A). No "permanently constructed fireplaces" (in terms of bylaw 7) are considered to be necessary in the Park. "Approved cooking equipment" covers portable camping stoves, cookers and burners. During use, the flame should be enclosed and Park bylaws as to location should be observed. Solid fuel barbecues and thermettes are not "approved cooking equipment", because the disposal of the resulting embers can constitute a fire hazard. Users have a responsibility to ensure that any fire does not create a fire hazard.

The overall responsibility for the control and extinguishing of outdoor fires in the Park or within 1km of its boundaries lies with the Department of Conservation under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977. The Department's *Standard Operating Procedure: Fire control, operations, procedures and guidelines* (1999) directs its fire tasks. A fire plan, for use in fire emergencies, is revised annually and details the fire-fighting equipment available and procedures to be followed. See also 6.1.3 Village Fire Control.

Responsibility for the protection of buildings from fire is split according to ownership of the buildings. Government departments are responsible for fire protection inspections and the maintenance of fire equipment in their own buildings. The New Zealand Fire Service and Mackenzie District Council are responsible for fire safety inspections and licensing of concessionaire accommodation buildings.

Methods

4.1.8

Enforce the Park bylaws, and restricted and prohibited fire seasons and respond to all smoke reports.

2. Have an ongoing commitment to the education of Park users and co-operation with adjoining land occupiers. Interpretive information, public notices, publicising of bylaws and contact with Park staff will be given priority where possible.

4.1.9 Boundaries and Land Additions

Policies

4.1.9(a)

To keep the Park boundaries under continuous review to enable adjustments or additions to be considered that would assist ecosystem protection, public use or land management.

4.1.9(b)

To promote minor adjustments to the Park boundaries to rectify anomalies or to better achieve Park objectives.

Explanation

4.1.9(a) - Some areas adjoining the Park have been suggested over the years as possible additions. These include the Birch Hill river-flats, the Birch Hill Stream catchment, parts of the Ben Ohau Range, the Tasman riverbed, the southern side of the Liebig Range and the Sibbald Range. The process of Crown pastoral lease tenure review is likely to result in additions to conservation lands from the pastoral leases and unallocated Crown Lands adjoining the National Park. Some of these lands may be suitable for additions to the Park – see Policies 7.1 and 7.3 in *General Policy for National Parks* (1983).

Section 8 National Parks Act 1980 provides for the investigation of proposals for additions to the Park. The criteria for additions come from section 4 (1) of the Act and are that the areas contain such distinctive quality, ecological systems, or natural features so beautiful, unique, or scientifically important that their preservation is in the national interest. The section 8 procedure of public notification and reporting to the New Zealand Conservation Authority is independent of the management plan process and boundary changes are therefore outside the statutory authority of this Plan.

4.1.9(b) - The Authority has some discretion in deciding whether or not to invoke the Section 8 procedures before it formulates a recommendation to the Minister of Conservation in terms of Section 7(2) National Parks Act 1980. Its policy is that, while each proposal will be examined on its individual merits, in general, minor boundary adjustments need not be subject to the Section 8 procedures.

An unformed legal road runs through the Godley Valley area of the Park. By revoking the legal road status and applying National Park status, the public right of freedom of entry and access to the Park will be retained, but the same regulation on types and methods of access as on surrounding National Park land will apply. The retention of 4WD access is intended and is addressed in 4.2.4. Roads, Parking Area & Vehicles. The road status change would avoid legal problems of jurisdiction and prevent uncertainty.

For some unknown reason a recreation reserve in three small parts on the Hooker Valley flats was not added to the Park when it was created in 1953.

Part of the Birch Hill river-flats (conservation area H37 018) was removed from the National Park in 1969 for park staff accommodation, but was not used and is no

longer needed for that purpose. It is appropriate to consider returning this conservation area to the Park. The area contains a short section of formed State Highway 75 not on the legal road.

These three areas are considered to fall into the category of adjustments of a tidying-up or anomalous nature. They are areas within the general Park boundaries, but which at present have a different status.

Methods

4.1.9(a)

Reports will be prepared for the New Zealand Conservation Authority on the desirability or otherwise, of section 8 National Parks Act investigations of boundary adjustments arising from the Crown pastoral lease tenure review process.

4.1.9(b)

Actions will be taken to:

- seek the closure of the legal road in the Godley Valley and to add the land to the Park;
- seek the addition of the recreation reserve (conservation units H36 025/026/027) to the Park; and
- seek the return of the conservation area (H37 018) to the Park, after first seeking that Transit New Zealand legalises the formed road route in exchange for the unformed legal road.

4.1.10 Management of Adverse Effects

Policy

4.1.10

To ensure that adverse effects of activities and developments carried out within the Park do not prevent the primary objectives in section 2.2.1 of this Plan being achieved.

Explanation

4.1.10 - National parks are established to preserve natural values in perpetuity for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the public. Preservation of these values is a fundamental requirement of the Act. This includes management of the Park by the Department as it undertakes its activities and developments. The Department will manage effects within the Park to ensure that the primary objectives in section 2.2.1 are achieved. Where concessions are involved the relevant provisions of 4.3 Concessions and Other Uses apply.

An assessment of environmental effects appropriate to the scale of the activity should be undertaken prior to any activities or developments commencing in the Park, which are likely to impact on natural, historic, cultural or visitor values. The Department's guidelines for these assessments should be used or other assessments should be endorsed by the Department, e.g. as may be prepared for a Resource Management Act consent application.

The following method provides a general guide where the activity or development is not covered by a specific policy or method in this Plan. The intention of this method is to ensure that the Park is always managed so as to achieve the primary objectives set out in section 2.2.1.

Methods

4.1.10

1. Require that an assessment of environmental effects be undertaken prior to any new activities or developments being considered, using the Department's standards for assessment.

2. Assess existing and proposed activities and developments within the Park for potential adverse effects on:

- the preservation of the Park's natural, archaeological, cultural and historic values;
- the Park's visitor management setting(s);
- Park visitors.

4.2 VISITORS

4.2.1 Access within the Park

This policy deals with the rights of access and the means of controlling access for public recreational activities. Facilities to assist access are dealt with under policy 4.2.3 Recreational Facility Development.

Policies

4.2.1(a)

To foster public access and use of the Park consistent with:

1. the preservation and protection of the Park's scenery, natural features, ecological systems and plant and animal life;
2. the visitor management settings;
3. minimising conflict between different visitor groups;
4. visitor safety.

4.2.1(b)

To apply the visitor management settings, described in 1.3.5.1, within the areas of the Park as shown on Figures 4 and 4A¹ and as described in Appendix J.

Explanation

4.2.1(a) - National parks are established to preserve natural values in perpetuity for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the public. The public have the right of access to all areas of the Park. It may however, be necessary to manage the method or amount of access to avoid compromising the Park's natural, historic and cultural resources and to maintain the range of visitor experiences, such as the enjoyment, inspiration, solitude or experiencing the natural quiet of an area.

Aspects of the Park's recreational use are significant in a national setting. For example, the Park is the premier alpine climbing area for the country. Special consideration of this long-established and nationally significant activity is required when assessing the effect of any new recreational development proposal.

At all times, the Department must consider the safety of visitors from known hazards and make judgements on what degree of risk is reasonable, given the balance of likely visitor skills, visitor numbers and the visitor experience sought to be provided within each visitor management setting.

Management of access and use may involve limiting numbers to, or closing specific areas of, the Park for certain periods.

¹ The boundaries of the visitor management settings have been plotted at 1:50,000 scale and can be viewed at this scale at the Aoraki Area and Canterbury Conservancy Offices.

Closing a part of the Park can be legally enforced if need be, but is more likely to occur by seeking visitor co-operation through the use of signs and information (e.g. former Ball Hut road for avalanche danger; Empress Hut during a rock-fall threat).

4.2.1(b) - Visitor management settings provide a framework for managing a range of recreational visitor experiences. Managing access within each visitor management setting is one way of helping maintain a range of visitor experience. For example, the Kea Point and Tasman Glacier lookout tracks are maintained to a standard that enables large groups of visitors, who may be inexperienced in the outdoors, to walk up and view the glaciers.

The visitor management settings shown on Figure 4 and as described in Appendix J have been chosen in conformity with *The Recreational Opportunity Spectrum Guideline for Users* (1993), which includes consideration of the existing means of physical access (car/bus, 4 x 4 vehicle, aircraft, foot), existing visitor activities and existing facilities.

The visitor management setting shown along the SH80 alignment does not apply to the State Highway itself – see section 4.4.2 State Highway 80.

Methods

4.2.1(a)

Assess proposals for the maintenance, further development or upgrading of Park access, having particular regard to:

- any impacts on the Park's natural, historic and cultural resources, including any potential impacts of increased visitor use as a result of the access development or upgrade;
- the existing natural character of the specific area in which the maintenance, development or upgrade is proposed;
- the appropriateness of the type of access for the visitor management setting within which it is proposed;
- the existing use and history of recreation in the area;
- any adverse effects on Ngāi Tahu values.

4.2.1(b)

1. Apply the visitor management settings as in Figures 4 and 4A.
2. Should the former Ball Hut road to Husky Flat cease to be usable, then the "backcountry accessible motorized" setting will change to the "backcountry walk-in" setting.
3. The Godley Valley "remote" visitor management setting area and the whole of the Hooker and Mueller valleys up-valley from the White Horse Hill, will be particularly managed to protect "natural quiet", subject to section 4.3.3, Tables 3 and 4.

FIG 4: AORAKI/MT COOK VISITOR MANAGEMENT SETTINGS

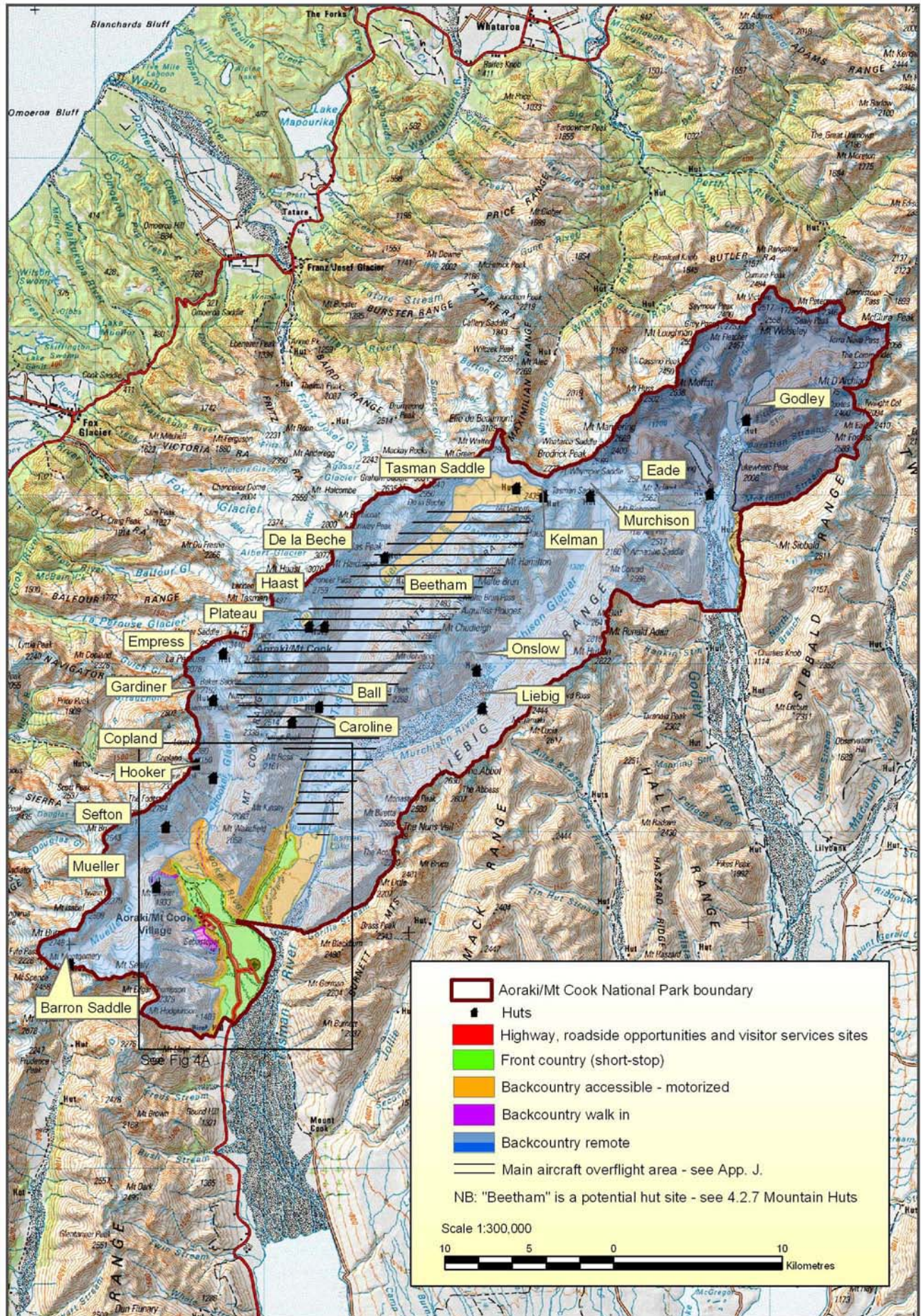
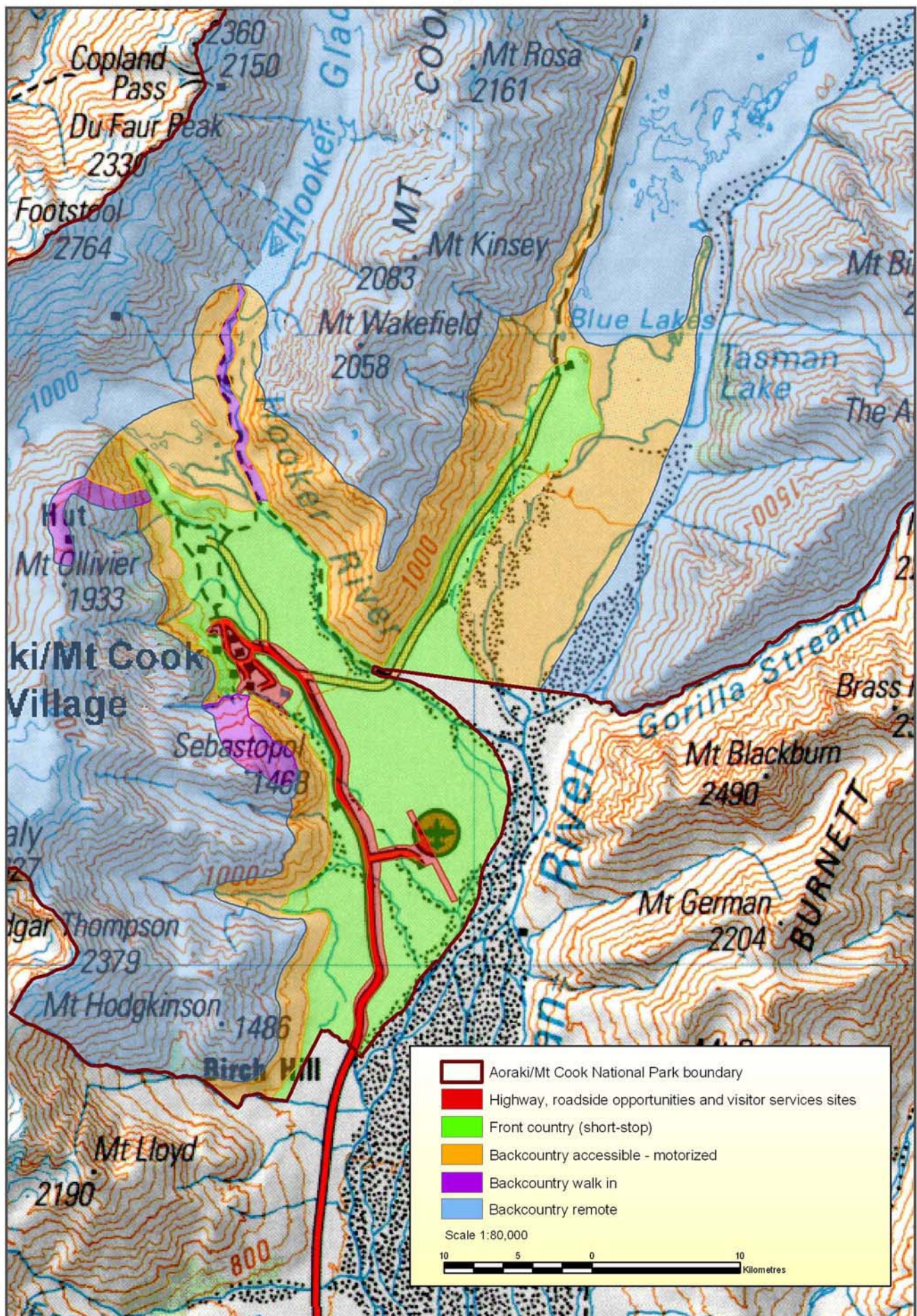


FIG 4A: AORAKI/MT COOK VISITOR MANAGEMENT SETTINGS - DETAIL



4.2.2 Recreational Activities

This policy applies to non-commercial activities. For consideration of commercial activities refer to policy 4.3.2 Concessions General.

Policy

4.2.2

To foster recreational activities to the extent that they are consistent with the preservation of the Park and Park bylaws.

Explanation

4.2.2 - Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park offers an attractive setting for a wide range of recreational activities, including climbing, skiing, tramping, hunting and less active pursuits.

- The Park is the premier alpine climbing region in New Zealand and for Australia. While much of the Park is accessible only to properly equipped climbers, lower areas in the Hooker, Tasman and Godley valleys are suitable for tramping and walking. The Mueller Hut and Ball Pass routes are becoming popular for summer high level tramping in suitable conditions, while the Copland Pass route remains as a more difficult trans-alpine crossing.
- Four types of skiing occur in the Park: glacier day skiing with ski-plane positioning; ski mountaineering, often as an adjunct to climbing and sometimes using either ski planes or helicopters for positioning; heliskiing with helicopter positioning; and cross country or Nordic skiing at lower altitudes.
- The Park offers some recreational hunting for thar. While hunters would like to see a trophy quality herd maintained this cannot be a consideration under the provisions of the National Parks Act, as implemented by the Himalayan Thar Control Plan (see 4.1.5 Introduced Animals and Domestic Animals). Strategically placed huts do encourage hunters into seldom-visited areas.
- Game bird numbers fluctuate, and are not considered to be threatening the populations of flora and fauna. There is no tradition of game bird shooting in the Park.
- The predominant boating activity in the Park, as at 2003, is the concessionaire-run activity on the growing pro-glacial lakes at the Tasman and Mueller glacier snouts.
- The Tasman River has been used for guided rafting expeditions, while the Hooker River is a difficult challenge for kayakers. Neither is much used. Because of the high level of suspended sediment in the rivers, they are not ideal for jet boating.

Activities that have an adverse impact on the Park or on its users, will be constrained, controlled or prohibited as appropriate and necessary for the management of the Park.

Where it is considered necessary to regulate the conduct of the public in order to protect the Park's natural and historic values, bylaws should be developed and recommended to the Minister.

It is possible that the potential adverse effects of an activity will not be known until some time after it has commenced. If adverse effects are not known and the activity appears to be consistent with the policies and objectives of this plan and where no satisfactory information on the activity can be found from the users or other New Zealand or overseas sources, then a precautionary approach should be taken.

A monitoring programme should be established before or as soon as a new activity commences, the results recorded and analysed. If the adverse effects are found to be unacceptable and cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated, the Department should then recommend to the Minister that the activity be controlled or prohibited through Park bylaws.

When boats, canoes and rafts are floating on the water, they will be subject to the Resource Management Act 1991, as administered by the Mackenzie District Council. The Maritime Safety Authority has a role in respect of watercraft safety.

Method

4.2.2

Monitor and assess the likely cultural, physical and social adverse effects of an activity having particular regard to:

- the management objectives set out in section 2.2 of this plan;
- the appropriateness of the activity for the visitor management setting(s) within which it is proposed to be undertaken;
- any adverse effects on Ngāi Tahu values;
- the extent of opportunities for the activity to be undertaken outside of the Park;
- any known effects of the activity where it has previously been undertaken;
- consistency with relevant legislation and the Park Bylaws.

4.2.3 Visitor Facility Management

Policies

4.2.3(a)

To provide a range of facilities that enables visitors to experience and appreciate the natural and historic features and cultural values of the Park.

4.2.3(b)

To consider visitor facility proposals within the Park where they are consistent with the visitor management setting(s) in which the facility is to be located and with the objectives and policies of this plan.

4.2.3(c)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu, as expressed in the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.2.3(a) - The management of facilities within the Canterbury Conservancy is directed by the Department's national visitor assets and recreational opportunities programmes, the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000) and other Departmental strategies. This ensures that the Department focuses its resources on the national provision of recreational facilities, rather than simply focusing on one area. Community consultation and community involvement in management are part of the Department's process.

Facilities may be provided, where they are consistent with the visitor management setting, to enhance the visitor experience and to protect the Park's natural values. For example, the Kea Point track and lookout upgrade has provided visitors with easy access to an impressive vantage point for viewing the Mueller Glacier and Hooker Valley. The high standard track and viewing deck also prevents visitors from trampling vegetation and creating new tracks in an otherwise natural environment.

Options for future management of the Hooker Valley track were debated through the draft plan and the resulting submissions. For the life of this Plan the following management of the track will occur:

- ongoing visitor number and visitor perceptions monitoring;
- maintain track to Mueller Lake viewpoint to "short walk" standard and from thereon, to "walking track" standard, recognising a constriction at the bluffs leading to and at the second swing bridge. Occasional lay-bys will assist larger groups to pause and to pass other visitors;
- remove the Stocking Stream shelter and toilets and locate improved facilities near, but discrete from, Hooker Lake (see 4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters), incorporating the historic Hooker Hut as a day shelter only;
- consider a one-way loop track between the second swing bridge and Hooker Lake, subject to seasonal avalanche path safety and visitor number pressures.

Any such loop will swing to the west of the existing track, not east over the Hooker River;

- maintain other track options to reduce pressure on the Hooker Valley but recognise that the Hooker experience is unique and will continue to attract high use;
- apply greater control to bus-load visitors. Party size should not exceed 15 persons; encourage the spread of visitors throughout the day and consider a limited number of concessionaire operators and all parties booking through them.

4.2.3(b) - The visitor management settings defined in section 1.3.5.1 provide a framework against which the appropriateness of proposed new or upgraded facilities can be assessed. It is important that a facility is not developed which is out of character with the visitor management setting(s). In particular there is a need to be wary of over-development within each visitor management setting - for example at Plateau and Tasman Saddle/Kelman huts.

The need for new or upgraded facilities in the Park must be clearly demonstrated. Consideration must be given to the possible adverse effects of the development on the Park's natural, historic and cultural values. Development should be permitted only where the statutory criteria are met and such development is consistent with the primary objective in section 2.2.

In some cases facilities may be needed to minimise adverse visitor-to-visitor impacts.

Careful consideration of other relevant policies in this Plan will enable an informed decision to be made as to the appropriateness of the development and whether specific conditions need to be set to avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects. For example, the location of a new alpine hut in the "backcountry walk-in" setting would generally be consistent with that visitor management setting, but a full containment toilet system may be a condition on that development, in accordance with the policy on waste management. This acknowledges the significance of waters within the Park to Ngāi Tahu. It is important that the Plan is considered as a whole.

4.2.3(c) - The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki, under sections 212 – 213 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, applies here. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views in relation to the location, construction and relocation of any structures, huts, signs and tracks within the Tōpuni area.

Methods

4.2.3(b)

Assess proposals for visitor facility development within the Park having particular regard to:

- the impacts of the development on the Park's natural, historic and cultural resources;
- potential impacts of any increased visitor use as a result of the development;

- the existing natural features of the specific area in which the facility development is proposed;
- the effect upon visitors' experience;
- the appropriateness of the facility development for the visitor management setting within which it is proposed;
- the availability of similar facilities outside the Park;
- the objectives and other policies of this Plan.

4.2.3(c)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua, and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values, in relation to the location, construction and relocation of any structures, huts, signs and tracks within the Tōpuni area. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters, both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in policy 4.2.3(c).

4.2.4 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles

Policies

4.2.4(a)

To maintain and where appropriate improve, existing formed roads, parking areas and associated signposts, where this is environmentally and physically feasible.

4.2.4(b)

Vehicles should not be permitted to move off a formed road except:

- in emergency or search and rescue situations, or
- for Park management purposes, approved research, or to service concessionaire facilities or public utilities, as provided for in a concession, only where no reasonable alternative access is available, or
- to follow a 4WD vehicle track in the Godley Valley to a defined vehicle end-point at Separation Stream, or
- to follow a 4WD vehicle track in the Tasman Valley from the Blue Lakes carpark to Husky Flat, until such time as the track is closed due to natural events, or
- as otherwise provided for by the Park Bylaws.

4.2.4(c)

To remove formed roads and 4WD vehicle tracks that cease to serve any relevant purpose or which become unsafe and return the land to as near to a natural a state as possible.

Explanation

See Figures 3 and 4 for localities.

4.2.4(a) - This policy only applies to roads and parking areas constructed on National Park land. They do not apply to State Highway 80, which is legal road under separate jurisdiction or to the legal road through the Park in the Godley Valley (see 4.1.9 Boundaries and Land Additions).

The Park Bylaws (see Appendix A) prohibit the driving of vehicles in the Park, except:

- on formed roads, including vehicle tracks;
- in appropriated camping sites (see 4.3.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters);
- in appropriated parking places;
- as authorised in a concession;
- in an emergency, or

- where the Director-General of Conservation considers it necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration and control of the Park.

While the definition of "road" in the Bylaws includes "tracks formed for the use of vehicles", it is useful for the purposes of this management plan to distinguish two types of road. "Formed roads" are sign-posted and regularly maintained; "4WD vehicle tracks" are rough vehicle tracks in the Hooker, Tasman and Godley valleys that are not maintained by the Department (see (b) and (c) below).

Existing "formed roads" (at 2001) are:

- Tasman Valley Road (as far as Blue Lakes);
- Hooker Valley Road to White Horse Hill campground;
- Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport access road;
- all roads within the Village;
- short feeder roads to parking, picnicking and gravel extraction areas.

Given the terrain of the Park, these formed roads are considered to be sufficient and there is no intention at this stage that others will be developed or park vehicle tracks upgraded. They will be kept open as often as practicable. Experience on the Tasman Valley Road has shown that roads closed by erosion may not be able to be reopened immediately or may have to be closed permanently, because it is impractical to reopen them. Funding for the Tasman Valley Road is from Transfund as a "special purposes road".

Existing parking places (at 2004) are located at Foliage Hill/White Horse Hill, Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport, Hooker Corner and Blue Lakes. Additional parking areas may be required to service day visitor facilities, (see 4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters) in line with providing for an increase in day visitor numbers.

The restrictions on new roads and parking areas and on vehicle use cannot be absolute, as new facilities or concessions, including for road metal excavation, may be approved and require access. New roads require the consent of the Minister under section 55(2) of the National Parks Act.

Formed roads are roads for the purposes of the Land Transport Act 1998 and the provisions of that Act apply.

For the use of gravel, shingle, stone or other material in the construction and maintenance of formed roads and State Highway 80, see 4.3.7 Mining and Shingle/Rock Removal.

4.2.4(b) - Off-road vehicle use should be kept to a minimum to preserve the natural state of the Park. Apart from the impact on vegetation, a particular concern is ground nesting birds on the river flats.

A developing problem is 4WD vehicles not keeping to the roughly tracked route up the Godley Valley to Separation Stream. In the absence of a survey it is not possible to determine if this route is on National Park land or on legal road. This creates administrative difficulties, particularly if an offence under the National Parks Act or Park bylaws is being committed, and in controlling vehicles and other activities beyond or along the vehicle route, where those activities are clearly contrary to the adjoining National Park management.

The use of vehicles in the Park beyond Separation Stream, where there is no legal road, and/or environmental damage by such vehicles, is contrary to the National Parks Act, the General Policy for National Parks and the Park bylaws.

The Tasman Valley vehicle track from the Blue Lakes carpark to Husky Flat, while currently usable by car in part and 4WD in total, is vulnerable to natural flooding, avalanche, rock fall and moraine wall slumping. It is inevitable that the track will become less usable as these natural events occur, unless maintenance or reconstruction by heavy machinery is undertaken. Natural forces should largely be left to occur along this vehicle track and only minimal maintenance be carried out. This is the same management as is occurring with the adverse effects of natural forces on huts and tracks in the Park, in connection with their maintenance, relocation or removal.

4.2.4(c) - 4WD vehicle tracks into Hoophorn Stream valley and beside Black Birch Stream were formed for SH80 purposes in the past. Their continued existence, in association with the public right to use them provided by the bylaws, causes problems for management, which can best be resolved by land rehabilitation to 'remove' the tracks. Access will however be retained, so that Transit New Zealand can undertake, with the necessary approvals, river protection works as necessary to protect the SH80 access into the Park.

Methods

4.2.4(a)

1. Formed roads will as far as practicable be maintained to all-weather standards, consistent with the visitor management setting.
2. As the avalanche danger on the Tasman Valley Road beyond Hooker Corner can be unacceptably high, this road or parts of it, may be closed to traffic as a safety measure on a seasonal or temporary basis.
3. Existing parking places will be formalised in terms of the National Parks Act 1980. New parking places will also be formalised, to allow for vehicle use in accordance with the Park Bylaws. Parking places will be designed, constructed and maintained to be environmentally attractive to visitors and to encourage use. Rehabilitation measures will be applied to substandard existing areas, and to newly developed areas (see 4.1.2 Landscape Management).
4. Through liaison with Transfund New Zealand, the Department will also seek the ongoing retention of the "special purposes road" funding for the Tasman Valley Road.

4.2.4(b)

1. To stop the legal road up the Godley Valley from the National Park boundary so that it can be added to the National Park (see 4.1.9 Boundaries and Land Additions), thus bringing all land under a single administrative authority.
2. Allow the continued use of 4WD vehicles on a defined access route as far as Separation Stream. Seek, in consultation with relevant visitor groups, to

find a solution that avoids vehicle use away from a defined access route (4WD vehicle track) and avoids, remedies or mitigates any damage to vegetation or ground-nesting birds.

3. To allow the maintenance of the Tasman Valley vehicle track from the Blue Lakes carpark onward, only where:

- the use of heavy machinery is not required;
- no indigenous vegetation is affected;
- the remains of the Ball Hut old road and horse track are not affected.

4.2.5 Climbing Impacts

Climbing generally, is fostered by policy 4.2.2 Recreational Activities.

Policies

4.2.5(a)

To recognise the tradition of climbing in the Park and to work with the climbing fraternity to maintain or achieve the respectful use of the mountains, the available facilities and the National Park generally.

4.2.5(b)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu, as expressed in the Tōpuni for Aoraki/Mount Cook.

Explanation

4.2.5(a) - Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park has a long tradition of climbing and it remains a major activity over most of the Park. The climbing community has contributed much to the Park (e.g. see 4.2.7 Huts) and, along with trampers, to national park and protected area principles and management generally.

Often unwittingly however, climbers are having an impact on the natural, recreational and Ngai Tahu cultural values of the Park. The issues of particular concern are bolting, bodily human waste disposal and Aoraki/Mount Cook summit climbing.

Climbers also have an involvement with memorials, the spreading of deceased persons' ashes in the Park and deaths. These issues are covered in 4.1.6 Historic Resources and Memorials and 4.2.8 Visitor Safety and Emergency Services respectively.

Bolting and other 'protection'

Climbing involves the use of some form of 'protection' to safeguard climbers should they fall. Bolts are sometimes used as permanent anchors in rock on extreme routes or are used at some abseil points. Bolting involves hammering or power-drilling a hole that will take an anchor point that climbers can pass a rope through or "tie off" to. Bolt use is common in the Park and widespread on the Sebastopol Bluffs where defined climbing routes have regularly used bolts. Old and/or unsafe bolts can usually be removed or punched in and grouted over.

Some climbers and others have raised ethical questions about the use of bolts *per se* and specifically about their use in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. A 'rule' that is accepted by some is that if a route was first climbed without bolts then they should not be later used. The development of new climbing aids may reduce the need for bolting.

Some of the debate regarding bolting also applies to other forms of protection, such as pitons which, driven into existing cracks in the rock, may also be left as 'permanent' anchors. Bolts, however, have a more intrusive effect, as they do require a physical modification, by drilling, of the National Park.

The issue is in part, whether bolt-dependent climbing is an appropriate activity within the Park and in part, whether bolting is just another form of visitor facility that is provided by visitors. Any detracting from the Park's intrinsic worth, the primary objective of this plan, needs to be considered.

In law the specific approval of the Department is required for bolting (and for permanent pitons), but has seldom been sought or given. The Department has a responsibility under the Occupiers' Liability Act 1962 to take action to ensure there is no reasonable cause of risk to potential users of the bolts. To this end, the existing bolted areas on the Sebastopol Bluffs are currently inspected annually and signposted to warn of potential use risk. Other notification is provided through avenues such as club magazines.

The use of bolts is promoted by some climbers as a better alternative to the cumulative effect of numerous abandoned abseil slings. This may be so, but equally climbers should be removing abandoned slings if they themselves need to leave their own slings, under the "pack-it-in, pack-it-out" policy for backcountry areas (see 4.2.10 Waste Disposal and Park by-law 4(a) in Appendix A).

If bolting is to be used by climbers then the Department would rather this was done under a code of practice that also addressed other forms of permanent protection and abandoned sling removal. Should the use of climbing bolts or other forms of protection within the Park become unacceptable to the preservation of the Park's natural and historic values, or to the protection of Ngāi Tahu values within the Tōpuni, then a Park bylaw will be required to control the activity.

Human Wastes Disposal

The Department will seek the support of climbers for a personal pack-it-out policy for human wastes (see 4.2.10 Waste Disposal).

Aoraki/Mount Cook summit climbing

For Ngāi Tahu, climbers standing upon the very top of Aoraki, the head of Aoraki the ancestral tipuna, denigrates its tapu status (see 1.3.2.1 Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni). By informal agreement, aided it must be said by currently unstable summit geology, climbers have in recent years been generally respectful of the wishes of Ngāi Tahu. The Department wishes this respect to continue.

This issue also applies to other ancestral tipuna summits (see 1.3.2.1 Aoraki/Mount Cook and Tōpuni) and to the waters flowing from them, but these other summits and waters do not have the legal recognition of the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni (see 4.2.5(b) below).

4.2.5(b) - The Actions by the Director-General (see Appendix B), pursuant to clause 12.5.10 of the *Deed of Settlement* 1997, apply here. The Director-General is required to encourage respect for the association of Ngāi Tahu with Aoraki, the relevant actions being to provide educational material to climbers regarding Aoraki, to encourage the removal of rubbish and wastes and to review the conditions to be applied to new concessions.

The Ngāi Tahu values for Aoraki and the Tōpuni area are set out in 1.3.2.1 Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni. Alongside Ngāi Tahu there is a growing international movement by indigenous peoples to expect more respectful use of their sacred

mountains (e.g Uluru in Australia, Denali in Alaska, and Sagamartha/Chomolunga in Nepal/Tibet) by climbers and other visitors.

Methods

4.2.5(a)

1. In respect of bolting the Department will:

- develop a Code of Practice for bolting, other protection and sling removal within the Park in conjunction with the climbing fraternity;
- monitor, in conjunction with climbers, the use and safety of bolts on the Sebastopol Bluffs;
- in conjunction with climbers remove any unsafe or inappropriately placed bolts or other 'protection'.

2. In respect of human wastes see 4.2.10 Waste Disposal.

3. In respect of summit climbing on Aoraki/Mount Cook the Department will work with recreational climbers and mountain guides and provide educational material to encourage respectful use of the mountain. New guiding concessions will include conditions requiring clients are provided with this educational material.

4.2.5(b)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua, and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values, in relation to climbing within the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni area. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters, both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in policy 4.2.5(b).

4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters

Policies

4.2.6(a)

To provide for camping in the Park, in accordance with the Park bylaws, except within areas where camping must be prohibited to avoid the deterioration of the Park's natural, historic and cultural resources or within the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.

4.2.6(b)

To allow for the development of picnic areas, shelters and short-stop lookouts and associated car parks, within the following visitor management settings - "front-country" and "highways, roadside opportunities and visitor service sites", to the extent that they are consistent with the preservation of the Park and the other objectives and policies of this plan.

4.2.6(c)

To make all camping sites available to the public on a first-come first-served basis unless pressure from high visitor use requires a booking or other management system to be established.

Explanation

4.2.6(a) - Camping in the Park away from formed roads, either in tents, rock bivouacs, snow caves or in the open, is an accepted part of recreation activities. The Park Bylaws (see Appendix A) require that all areas on which camping occurs be left clean and tidy after use.

Camping (which includes staying overnight within vehicles, as defined in the bylaws interpretation) needs to be managed in order to avoid conflict with Park values and other activities. Park Bylaw 5 prohibits camping within 200 metres of a formed road, unless the Department has given prior permission.

The Department intends to concentrate roadside camping into a single part of the Park at White Horse Hill, where natural shelter exists, the terrain is suitable and simple facilities can be provided. The provision of such facilities (toilets, rubbish collection and a cooking shelter with water) in the camping site is consistent with the area's front-country visitor management setting and recognises the limited seasonal nature of the site's use. The Department may contract out the management of this camping site and will consider providing coin-operated gas-heated showers.

Campers seeking a wider range of facilities will be encouraged to use motor camps outside the Park.

Bylaw 5 also requires that, without the consent of the Department, no person may camp in the Park for more than 14 consecutive days.

Bylaw 5A prohibits camping within 500 metres either side of the "Mount Cook/Westland Alpine track" (the Copland Pass route), within 100 metres radius of any hut, or in an emergency shelter. This bylaw provision can be over-ridden if any part of the area is appropriated (see Bylaw 2, "Camping site") as a camping site

under the National Parks Act, or the place is an emergency shelter and camping in the shelter is in an emergency.

Camping (including within vehicles) will not generally be permitted within the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village due to the lack of suitable sites and the desire to avoid the mixing of front-country camping activity with the intensive Village developments. Exceptions are allowed for safety reasons – see 6.2.2 Vehicle Access. In addition there may be occasions when, to avoid the deterioration of natural areas or visitor experiences by overuse, specified areas are closed to all camping and snow-caving by applying Park Bylaw 5A. This may be necessary around Mueller and Plateau huts where, as at 2003, considerable camping does occur, in and around Copland Shelter and in the lower Hooker Valley, although generally, camping beside Park huts is currently not a significant issue.

The camping situation near Mueller Hut may be dealt with by the combination of a new hut (see 4.2.7 Mountain Huts) and its provision of toilets and water supply facilities designed to also service nearby camping.

Where campers use hut facilities then the Department is justified in charging for a proportion of the relevant hut fee.

4.2.6(b) - Picnicking and short-stop visitor attractions and associated car parks are appropriate within the “front-country” and “highways, roadside opportunities and visitor service sites” visitor management settings. Day visitor numbers are increasing and special attention will have to be paid to their needs. Additional facilities for day visitors are likely to be required (see 4.2.3 Recreational Facility Development), the majority of which can be provided in the Village (see 6.2.4 Open Space).

Shelters and toilets are located (as at 2004) at:

- White Horse Hill campground;
- Stocking Stream on the Hooker Valley track;
- Tasman Valley Road - Blue Lakes carpark;
- within the Village (shelter also includes a shower).

Toilets are also available at commercial facilities and the Visitor Centre in the Village. Some toilets may be closed during winter months due to the water supply freezing.

New provisions for picnicking may be developed as necessary. In general terms, such new areas are likely to be associated with the Tasman or Hooker valley roads (see 4.2.4 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles). They should be sited so as not to intrude upon the open landscape of the Tasman Valley.

4.2.6(c) - The Department is (in 2003) considering the redesign of the White Horse Hill facilities’ area to provide better separation of the camping area from day-visitor car parking and of tent sites from campervan sites as well as increased camping sites, the amalgamation of camping facilities into a single building and improvements to the sewerage system.

It is inevitable that these improvements will draw more visitors and that in time, visitor demand will outstrip supply. In this event a booking or other management system may be required, as for similar campgrounds in other national parks.

Methods

4.2.6(a)

1. Designate the existing camping site at White Horse Hill, through appropriate signage, as a camping area and allow for associated vehicle use, in accordance with The Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981.
2. Designate camping sites around Mueller and Plateau huts and Ball Shelter and any other huts as necessary, in accordance with the Park bylaws.
3. Apply the camping prohibitions within The Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 when camping is causing unacceptable adverse effects near huts or near the Copland Pass route (the "Mount Cook/Westland Alpine Track") and alongside formed roads.
4. The Caroline Hut public shelter is deemed to be an overnight emergency shelter in respect of Bylaw 5A(2)(b) and camping in the shelter is not allowed except in emergencies.
5. A camping site with toilets will be established to service the Hooker Valley side of the Ball Pass crossing and, if necessary, a bylaw amendment will be sought to control camping in the east Hooker away from this provided site. Note policy and method 4.2.3(c).
6. Where campers use hut facilities a proportion of hut fees, as a camping fee, will be charged.
7. Seek a bylaw amendment to allow charging for the use of facilities at camping sites.

4.2.6(b)

1. Provide picnic areas, shelters and short-stop lookouts and associated car parks, in accordance with policy 4.2.3 Recreation Facility Development.
2. Establish a day-shelter, incorporating the historic Hooker Hut, near Hooker Lake, to replace the Stocking Stream shelter (see Explanation 4.2.7(a)).

4.2.7 Mountain Huts

Policies

4.2.7(a)

To make all Park huts¹ available to the public on a first-come first-served basis, unless pressure from high visitor use requires a booking or other management system to be established.

4.2.7(b)

To permit additional hut sites only in exceptional circumstances, that may include, but not be limited to:

- (i) an existing hut site becoming unsafe for any reason and requiring relocation to a new site;
- (ii) a temporary requirement for a hut for Park management purposes, authorised by the Department.

In all cases, Park huts will meet the Department's hut standards, fee structure and be consistent with the design principles for new and existing buildings.

4.2.7(c)

To locate only one hut (which may comprise linked buildings) at any one hut site, unless in accordance with policy 4.2.7(b)(ii).

4.2.7(d)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu as expressed in the Tōpuni and Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.2.7(a) - It is important that all Park huts continue to be accessible to the public on a first-come/first-served basis where possible, with no exclusive-use group and that any required booking system favours continued public use.

Monitoring of Park hut usage within the Park over the past twenty years shows total bed-night usage by climbers to be steady or even declining, although there are year-to-year, seasonal and hut-by-hut variations – see Appendix I. The Visitor Centre has a Park hut occupancy display and advice service that works reasonably well to avoid overcrowding in the climbing huts.

Conversely the Mueller Hut capacity is exceeded on occasions during the peak season by the predominant tramper/back-packer visitor use. This use will likely increase, along with guided concessionaire use, especially to the new and enlarged hut. A full booking system or other suitable management techniques may be required, if visitor experiences are diminished at this locality in the future (see 4.3.4 Guiding).

¹ The term “Park huts” means the public and club huts managed by the Department.

Bylaw 6 of *The Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981* states that, except in an emergency, no person shall use any one hut for more than seven successive nights without prior consent of the Department. This allows climbers to stay as close to their intended climb as possible.

Section 1.3.5.1 of this plan sets out guidelines for the use of Park huts by concessionaires. Where a concessionaire is seeking to use a hut, policy 4.3.2 Concessions General shall apply.

As shown on Figure 4 Park huts include (ownership in brackets):

- Ball Shelter (DOC)#
- Barron Saddle (DOC)
- Copland Shelter (DOC)
- De La Beche (NZ Alpine Club)
- Eade (NZ Deerstalkers Association)
- Empress (DOC)#
- Gardiner (DOC)#
- Godley (NZ Alpine Club)
- Haast (DOC)
- Hooker (DOC)
- Kelman (DOC)
- Liebig (DOC)
- Mueller (DOC)
- Murchison (NZ Alpine Club)
- Onslow (Steffan Memorial) (NZ Deerstalkers Association)
- Plateau (DOC)[#] - replacement intended 2003/04
- Sefton Bivouac (DOC)
- Tasman Saddle (DOC)

Hut sites in terms of policies 4.2.7(b) and (c) are also recognised in the general vicinity of the Beetham Valley and to serve the eastern side of the Copland Pass crossing. A Department-built hut at the Beetham site is not a high Department priority, but support will be given to a non-Department project, subject to policy 4.2.7(a).

Public and club members have equal access to all the above huts, with hut fees going to the clubs as per a management agreement with the Department.

Additional to the huts listed above is the concessionaire-use-only Caroline Hut on the Ball Ridge. It is an exception to the Park huts policy 4.2.7(a) under the hut's current concession. This hut has an attached public day-shelter, but overnight sleeping accommodation is allowed only in emergencies (see 4.2.6(a)). A public toilet is provided.

The increased popularity of the Ball Pass route is leading to some tension between guided party use and public use of the Caroline Hut shelter (and of the route). This is not surprising given the close proximity of concessionaire and public facilities. Tākata whenua have also expressed concern about the hut being located within the 1998-decreed Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni. The current concession expires in 2005, but has provision for one 15-year right of renewal. See also 4.2.6(a).

4.2.7(b) - The above Park huts and bivouacs have been developed over the years by mountain and hunting clubs and by public agencies and this varied tradition is

[#] These huts, and Caroline Hut, are within the Aoraki Tōpuni area (see 4.2.7(d)).

welcomed. They serve as shelter during adverse weather, as starting points for pass crossings and as bases for climbing or hunting activities. The Department provides the majority of park huts. The provision and any review¹ of these huts is guided through the Department's national visitor assets and recreational opportunities programmes. Working through these hut management issues with hut user groups is an essential and ongoing part of these programmes.

In deciding on the location of huts the most significant limiting factor is the lack of sites which are at minimal risk from avalanche hazard or geological instability. The availability of resources from the Department and elsewhere for construction, maintenance and servicing (see 4.2.10 Waste Disposal) is also a limiting factor.

Although it is recognised that huts play an important role in the provision of recreational opportunities and the safety of Park visitors, they are modifications of an otherwise unmodified environment. In general, huts will not be located in visually or environmentally sensitive areas. They should be restricted in size, consistent with the experience characteristics of the visitor management settings.

Applications for the provision of new huts in the Park may be considered on their merits but should be permitted only in exceptional circumstances.

The future of Hooker Hut was debated through the draft plan submissions, both on its own merits and within the wider context of Copland and Ball Pass crossings and Hooker Valley visitor use. Several clear directions emerged from this debate:

- A hut is required to service the Hooker Valley side of the Copland Pass crossing and in the interim at least, this will be the existing Copland Shelter, upgraded to hut status and with toilet facilities.
- Additional public facilities are needed to serve the Ball Pass crossing. These will be designated camping areas with toilet facilities in the east Hooker and at the Ball Shelter site (moved slightly to a stable area). Existing public toilets, day-shelter and emergency overnight shelter remain at Caroline Hut.
- Relocation of Hooker Hut to a site at the base of 'Copland Spur' is not viable on avalanche safety grounds due to the hut's design. A specially designed hut could withstand the predicted avalanche forces, but there is uncertainty on future moraine wall access. This may change in the longer term with moraine wall recession.
- A hut in the east Hooker would be too close to the road-end and would rapidly become an overcrowded destination in itself, rather than serving the Ball Pass crossing.
- The new Mueller Hut and associated camping has largely replaced the tramper/back-packer function that Hooker Hut used to serve, although with a larger capacity, more dramatic setting and longer access to heighten the visitor experience and reduce the adverse effects associated with a hut too near a road-end.
- Moving Hooker Hut out of the Hooker Valley, even out of the Park, would break the historical association between the hut and valley.
- Stocking Stream shelter and toilets in the lower Hooker Valley need replacing and new facilities will be placed nearer Hooker Lake, but discrete from the track and lakeside. Hooker Hut will become part of this day-shelter facility.

¹ "review" includes any renewal, relocation, extension, or removal proposal.

4.2.7(c) - As identified above, Park huts are modifications of an otherwise unmodified environment. It is important that clusters of huts are avoided so that modification is kept to the minimum necessary to provide for the visitor experience.

The combined effect of policies 4.2.7(a), (b) and (c), given the hut usage patterns identified in 4.2.7(a), is that there are unlikely to be any additional huts in the Park, other than renewals and possible huts in the Beetham and Hooker localities. Concessionaire-use-only huts, such as Caroline Hut, would not comply with the policies of this section of the Plan.

The issue of camping around huts is covered in 4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters.

4.2.7(d) – The actions required by the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni and the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki/Mount Cook, apply here. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views, in relation to the location, construction and relocation of any huts and in relation to conditions to be applied to new concessions, within the Tōpuni area. This includes the five huts listed in Explanation 4.2.7(a) above.

Methods

4.2.7(a) & (b)

1. Where hut overcrowding may cause or is causing unacceptable diminished experiences for visitors, the Department will continue its hut occupancy advice service. Where an enforceable booking system is required, the Department will recommend to the Minister that appropriate changes be made to the Park Bylaws and a booking system implemented.
2. Continue working with the New Zealand Alpine Club and New Zealand Deerstalkers' Association and other hut users through the visitor assets and recreational opportunities programmes.
3. At the time of the Caroline Hut concession renewal assessment in 2005 the Minister will re-assess the concession in terms of the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni. Any re-assessment of the concession in terms of the wider objectives and policies of this management plan may not be able to be addressed until the concession's expiry in 2020.
4. Upgrade Copland Shelter to hut status as an interim hut at least, to service the Hooker Valley side of the Copland Pass crossing.

4.2.7(d)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values, in relation to the location, construction and relocation of any huts and the review of hut concession conditions, within the Tōpuni area. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in policy 4.2.7(d).

4.2.8 Visitor Safety and Emergency Services

Policies

4.2.8(a)

To inform park visitors and concessionaires, as far as practicable, of potential natural hazards in the Park and to create an awareness and understanding of natural hazards, while recognising that visitors will be primarily responsible for their own safety.

4.2.8(b)

To co-operate fully with the New Zealand Police in search and rescue and with the civil defence, fire, ambulance, State Highway safety and other safety and health authorities.

4.2.8(c)

To provide Department expertise, as far as is practicable and necessary, to assist with emergency operations involving visitor safety.

4.2.8(d)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu, in respect to search and rescue programmes, as expressed in the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.2.8(a) - There is an element of risk for all users of the Park and it would be impractical to remove that risk entirely. Each person must be responsible for their own safety, but Park managers do contribute to safety through signage, other information and education programmes. The Department applies safety and health standards when managing facilities. It also provides equipment, such as hut radios.

Where a person's own resources prove inadequate to handling a situation, or where an accident occurs, a public service is provided to assist.

4.2.8(b) & (c) - Other authorities involved in ensuring visitor safety and the Department's interaction with them are:

The New Zealand Police, holding authority and responsibility for all search and rescue. By agreement with the Police, the Department provides an alpine search and rescue team over summer and contributes to a winter response group for the wider Mackenzie Basin.

Mackenzie District Council as the local Civil Defence organisation, holding responsibilities for public safety in the event of a civil emergency, under the Civil Defence and Emergency Act 2002. This role primarily relates to emergencies within the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village. Elsewhere in the Park search and rescue is the primary emergency service – see Police above. The Department has government department and land manager responsibilities to assist the Council, working with the Village community.

The emphasis is on sound risk management practices that begin with identifying and analysing hazards, mitigating these, being prepared and being able to respond to and recover from, any event. This is set out in a plan prepared by the Mackenzie District Council in conjunction with the Department and which is regularly reviewed. Practical implications of this approach can be seen in policy sections 4.1.7 Natural Hazards and 6.1.2 Waterways and Floodways.

New Zealand Fire Service Commission. The Department provides support for the Mount Cook Industrial Fire Brigade based in the Village, by agreements between the Commission, the Brigade and the Mount Cook Local Body Contributors.

St John Ambulance. The Department provides support for the volunteer St John ambulance team and the St John First Response Unit based in the Village, by agreement with The Order of St John, Northern Region South Island.

Mackenzie District Council and Canterbury District Health Board, having responsibilities for public health matters.

Civil Aviation Authority, with responsibility for aviation safety.

Transit New Zealand, as the authority responsible for the maintenance and safe and efficient operation of SH 80.

4.2.8(d) - The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki, under sections 212 – 213 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, applies here. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views, in relation to any departmental guidelines for search and rescue programmes within the Tōpuni area.

From time to time, deaths occur on Aoraki/Mount Cook. Tākata whenua would like to see protocols developed with the Department and the climbing community on the respectful treatment of bodies during their retrieval and holding at the Village, until collected for the Timaru coroner.

Method

4.2.8(d)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values. This is in relation to any Departmental guidelines for search and rescue programmes within the Tōpuni area and the retrieval and holding of bodies. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. “Consult” includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in policy 4.2.8(d).

4.2.9 Information and Interpretation

Policies

4.2.9(a)

To provide visitor information on the Park and the South-West New Zealand (Te Wāhipounamu) World Heritage Area, in a manner that promotes understanding of and respect for, Park values.

4.2.9(b)

To interpret the Park's natural, cultural and historic sites in a manner that promotes respect for Park values and the conservation management activities undertaken by the Department to protect these values and promotes conservation awareness generally.

4.2.9(c)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu when managing interpretation projects in the Park, as expressed in the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni and give effect to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for visitor and public information and historic resources.

4.2.9(d)

To enhance the experience and awareness of visitors by providing high quality interpretation.

Explanation

4.2.9(a) – Information provision and interpretation are primary means of educating visitors about the Park's values and its World Heritage Area status. Continued and increased awareness of the Park's values can help to ensure that future generations understand and protect these values.

The *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* 2000 provides the overall framework for interpretation for the Conservancy. Interpretation should be consistent with the *Strategy*.

4.2.9(b) - The relationship between the historic, natural and cultural heritage of the Park provides an excellent interpretive opportunity. The *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* 2000 and the *Canterbury Conservancy Interpretation Plan 2000* currently prioritise the production of interpretive media and ensure that consistency is maintained throughout the Conservancy. The latter follows the national interpretation themes of landshaping, flora and fauna and human occupation.

Key themes for interpretation of the Park are tectonics and glaciation, mountain ecology and forest remnants, Ngāi Tahu values and Tōpuni status, exploration and recreation history, pastoralism, national park heritage and the World Heritage Area status.

4.2.9(c) - The actions required for the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni and the agreed Protocols with Ngāi Tahu, apply here. The Director-General is required to provide information to staff, Conservation Board members, concessionaires and the public about the Ngāi Tahu values and the existence of the Tōpuni over Aoraki. He is also required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views, in relation to the provision of visitor and public information and to historic resources.

As part of these processes, the Department will consult with tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu before using Ngāi Tahu cultural information. The Department will also request that concessionaires consult with Ngāi Tahu (see 4.3.2 Concessions General).

4.2.9(d) - Understanding and appreciation of the Park can be increased by the provision of interpretive facilities and services. The main facility is the Park Visitor Centre in the Village with its displays, audiovisual presentation and information desk, managed in accordance with the *Visitor and Information Centre Strategy* (2001). Other forms of interpretation reach out to the variety of visitors to the Park and include:

- publications, e.g. books, maps, pamphlets, posters, slide sets, video cassettes;
- computer, internet and video communications;
- public contact (e.g. the possible operation of guided tours as part of holiday programmes, concessionaire operations and educational visits);
- signpost marking of roads and tracks;
- interpretation panels at points of interest (e.g. Tasman Glacier Lookout, Kea Point, site of first Hermitage hotel) and for the naming of flora;
- education programmes;
- an interpretation programme that raises awareness of natural, historic and cultural values in the Park, including those of Ngai Tahu;
- encouraging artistic interpretation of the Park and its values, through the national Wild Creations Artists in Residence programme with Creative New Zealand.

Each method has its strengths and weaknesses depending on who is its audience as visitors at various times during their stay have differing requirements, whether they be for park information, understanding of the purposes of national parks, safety education, ways to avoid damage to the Park, or prevent offences. Design standards for interpretive material are set by Department national guidelines.

Methods

4.2.9(c)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values, in relation to providing information about the Tōpuni and Ngāi Tahu values of the Park. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu

must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in policy 4.2.9(c).

4.2.9(d)

1. Outdoor interpretive panels will be eye-catching and informative in their design, yet not intrusive on the landscape in their location.
2. Consultation with Transit New Zealand will occur where interpretive signs and information about the Village and other park facilities are proposed in the Park alongside of or within sight of, State Highway 80.
3. The guiding of visitors around the Park on interpretive tours will primarily be by concessionaires (see 4.3.4 Guiding) or by Department staff, if the latter are available.
4. Concessionaires, through the opportunities available to them during their approved activities, will be required to promote the safe and enjoyable use of the Park and be encouraged to promote the purposes of national parks and reserves and the benefits of conservation generally.
5. Department staff will, to the extent that resources permit, assist education groups and, where appropriate, the special development of information directed at such groups.

4.2.10 Waste Disposal

Policies

4.2.10(a)

To seek the minimisation of refuse and for it to be disposed of at suitable sites outside the Park boundaries.

4.2.10(b)

To provide toilet facilities at all huts and other appropriate sites, as necessary.

4.2.10(c)

To maintain an efficient Village sewerage system.

4.2.10(d)

To extend the current “pack-it-in, pack-it-out” system to include bodily human waste from sensitive areas.

4.2.10(e)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu, as expressed in the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni.

Explanation

4.2.10(a) – Bylaw 4 of the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981 makes it an offence to dispose of refuse in the Park. All refuse should be removed from the Park and recycled or disposed of in approved facilities. Where a structure or facility is being constructed or dismantled, all waste materials should be removed from the Park.

The Mackenzie District Council and Environment Canterbury are the authorities managing waste disposal sites outside the Park. They are also the consent authorities for any discharges of waste within the Park. It will be necessary to liaise closely with these authorities to ensure that any adverse effects of waste disposal on the Park are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Mackenzie District Council is working towards a zero-waste policy for the District. The Department will need to plan for this eventuality. The tourist industry is developing several environmental standards that include waste issues.

The Council has provided a campervan sewage disposal point at Twizel and Tekapo.

4.2.10(b) - Toilet facilities of an appropriate standard will be provided in accordance with the Department’s visitor assets management programme or otherwise as required, through demand, particularly where there is overnight accommodation. Currently the Department is seeking and implementing cost-effective ways of containing and removing toilet waste from hut toilets, for disposal through the Village sewerage system.

4.2.10(c) - The Aoraki/Mount Cook Village has a primarily gravity-fed sewerage system, which means less opportunity for pump failure discharges, feeding to oxidation ponds beside Black Birch Stream within the Park. The ponds have a discharge to ground, although resource consent is held for discharges to Black Birch Stream. Monitoring, maintenance and plant upgrading is currently (2004) underway to minimise any adverse discharge effects. A new resource consent will be sought in 2005. Recent (1999) protection works (see 6.1.3 Waterways and Floodways) have reduced the risk of flood and debris damage to the ponds and the consequent risk of a breached pond discharge.

4.2.10(d) - The Department will continue to promote the “pack-it-in, pack-it-out” policy that requires visitors to carry out their own refuse or, in the case of abseiling and other slings for climbers, carry out the abandoned slings of previous climbers (see 4.2.5 Climbing).

For health, aesthetic, recreational appreciation and cultural reasons the Department wishes to extend the “pack-it-out” policy to bodily human waste. This is partly in response to policy 4.2.10(e), but would be applied to all sensitive areas, such as the high alpine (non-organic¹ soil) areas, the Aoraki Tōpuni area (see Figure 2) and wherever there may be a chance of affecting the waters that flow from Aoraki.

4.2.10(e) - The actions required of the Director General, under the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni, apply here. The Director-General is required to encourage respect for the association of Ngāi Tahu with Aoraki by encouraging the removal of all rubbish and waste and to ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that the Department disposes of waste, particularly human waste, in a way that minimises the risk of contamination of waterways.

Section 1.3.2 of this Plan identifies the specific values of Ngāi Tahu in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. Waters that flow from Aoraki are considered by Ngāi Tahu to be tapu/sacred. It is appropriate therefore, to minimise the ability of waste to reach any of these waters in the Park, whether they are frozen, still or flowing.

Methods

4.2.10(a)

Liaise with the Mackenzie District Council and concessionaires to ensure waste (including waste from campervans) is minimised and disposed of where it can be dealt with effectively, economically and with regard to the preservation of the environment.

4.2.10(b)

Maintain a monitoring and maintenance programme for the Village sewerage system and especially the oxidation ponds, to ensure its efficient operation and that any adverse effects of discharges to waterways or groundwater are avoided or remedied. Obtain discharge consents as needed from Environment Canterbury.

¹ For these purposes an organic soil is one with a well-developed, moist humus layer where natural bacterial processes will decompose shallow-buried faeces, and well clear of waterways (see Meyer, 1989).

4.2.10(d)

Encourage all visitors to remove their bodily human waste from high alpine (non-organic soil) areas and the Aoraki Tōpuni area and dispose of them in an environmentally and culturally acceptable manner. The Department will work closely with the climbing community, guiding concessionaires and others, to research, develop and promote this system within the Park.

4.2.10(e)

Consult with tākata whenua and where appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, to establish practices for waste management, particularly human waste management, within the Park.

4.3 CONCESSIONS AND OTHER USES

4.3.1 *Ngāi Tahu Customary Use*

Policy

4.3.1

To process applications for the customary taking and use of indigenous plants and animals and other natural materials from the Park, where it is consistent with the other policies of this Plan, the National Parks Act 1980, other relevant legislation and national policies.

Explanation

4.3.1 - Ngāi Tahu has traditionally taken and used indigenous species and other natural materials within their rohe. These species and materials were essential to everyday life and a necessity for tākata whenua. There is a present-day revival of former traditions and of the use of natural materials. Traditional species and materials include, but are not limited to, native plants used for food, weaving and medicine, native birds and other animals for their feathers and for food, clays and stones and water from sacred waters.

Section 5 of the National Parks Act 1980 allows for the cutting or taking of indigenous plant material and the trapping, killing, or taking of animals only with prior written consent of the Minister and where it is consistent with the management plan. The *General Policy for National Parks* 1983 requires that traditional uses of such plants and animals from a national park be provided for in the management plan where the plants or animals are not protected under other legislation and demands are not excessive.

It is possible, under the provisions of the Wildlife Act 1953 and section 5 of the National Parks Act, for applications to be lodged for the non-commercial gathering and use of freshwater fish, plants and some animals for traditional use by Māori.

The *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* has a "traditional use" section approved in accordance with the *Deed of Settlement* 1997 and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. In compliance with section 44A of the National Parks Act 1980 this plan shall not derogate from the *Conservation Management Strategy*.

The status of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park provides a high degree of protection to plants and animals within the Park. The taking and use of plants and animals is not necessarily inconsistent with the preservation of the Park. Ngāi Tahu will be encouraged, however, to use traditional materials from areas outside the Park. Some take and use may be sought for carrying out ceremonial activities in accordance with tikaka.

A permit is required from the Minister for the gathering of any materials from the Park. Restrictions on such gathering may be necessary to ensure that species/resource is preserved and that materials are available to future generations.

Given the physical nature of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park requests may possibly only arise in respect of feathers and bones of found dead birds, alpine plant material, rocks and water. The Park's geology makes the occurrence of pounamu very unlikely, but if found it is subject to the Ngāi Tahu (Pounamu Vesting) Act 1997. Its removal would entail the access arrangements under section 61B of the Crown Minerals Act 1991. Any request for freshwater fish, again unlikely in the Park, would involve consideration of section 5 of the National Parks Act and the Freshwater Fisheries Protocol (included in Appendix D).

The Department's Protocol with Ngāi Tahu for managing plant and animal cultural materials is attached as Appendix D. The Department is working with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu at the Rōpū Kaitiaki and Conservancy levels on the implementation of this Protocol and the customary use of other natural materials. Given the expected low level of customary use requests for the Park, there is merit in working with the issue at Rūnanga and conservancy levels.

Methods

4.3.1

1. Consider applications from Ngāi Tahu for the customary use of indigenous plants and animals and other natural materials where:

- no commercial gain is to be derived;
- there is a justified need to use resources from within the Park;
- there must have been a traditional use of that species within the Park;
- the use is not excessive and the protection and preservation of any species being considered is ensured;
- appropriate measures are taken to avoid, remedy or mitigate the effects of taking the species or materials.

2. In considering such applications regard will be given to whether the resources are available outside the Park and/or the approval would enable a source of materials to be subsequently located outside the Park.

3 Work with Papatipu Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu at the Rōpū Kaitiaki and conservancy levels to give effect to the provisions of the Protocol on Cultural Materials as in Appendix D.

4.3.2 Concessions General

Many concessionaires operate in the Park and provide a valuable service to visitors. Their role in doing this is acknowledged throughout the Plan. This Plan section focuses on the process of considering applications for concessions in general. Other sections of the Plan are also relevant to the processing of concession applications, depending on the proposed concession activity.

Policies

4.3.2(a)

To consider all applications for concession proposals and manage concessions in accordance with the relevant legislation, statutory planning instruments and the objectives and policies of this plan.

4.3.2(b)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu when managing concessions and have particular regard to the Tōpuni and Deed of Recognition for Aoraki and to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for historic resources.

Explanation

4.3.2(a) - It is important to consider all concession applications on their merits based on their potential effects, the relevant statutory framework, including planning instruments and this management plan.

Those exceptions, where a concession is not required to undertake an activity within the Park, are set out in section 17 O of the Conservation Act 1987.

There are a number of issues relating to concession applications. The first is ensuring that decision-makers receive adequate information to be able to consider applications.

Section 17S of the Conservation Act sets out the information that must be included in a concession application. A number of matters must then be considered in accordance with section 17U of the Act when deciding whether or not to approve an application. A description of the location of the proposed activity is basic to enabling the Department to determine the relevant visitor management setting(s).

Applicants must identify and provide information about the possible effects of their proposed activities. An appropriately detailed environmental impact assessment (EIA) may be required in accordance with section 17S(3). The Minister may, at the expense of the applicant, commission a report or review, seek advice from other persons or obtain relevant information from any source on matters relating to the application.

Consultation with Ngāi Tahu on each concession application may be undertaken by the Department as part of the Department's obligations arising from section 4 of the Conservation Act. See also Explanation 4.3.2(b).

Consultation may also be undertaken with the Conservation Board.

Concession applications are considered on a case-by-case basis. Appropriate conditions will be imposed and enforced to avoid, remedy or mitigate any potential adverse effects of the activity, structure or facility on the Park or Park visitors. These may include the Minister's standard conditions as well as, but not limited to:

- conditions on the activity, when and where it can be carried out and the scale of activity consistent with the visitor management setting(s);
- the provision of bonds to cover the costs of work required by the concession document;
- the restoration of the site and removal of structures or facilities at the expense of the concessionaire or the vesting of such facilities in the Crown, where appropriate, at the end of the concession term.

Concession opportunities may be publicly offered by:

- tendering the right to make an application;
- inviting applications; or
- carrying out other actions that may encourage specific applications.

Concession conditions may be included where the concessionaire is required to carry out activities relating to the management of any area, on behalf of the Minister.

Monitoring of concessions within the Park will become increasingly important as visitor use increases. The Department needs to be fully aware of the adverse effects of concessions, particularly cumulative effects, if it is to manage them effectively. For this reason where possible all new concessions granted for the Park and reviewed concessions should include monitoring provisions, which enable the terms and conditions of the concession to be adjusted as necessary, to ensure that any adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Approved monitoring programmes should be established to specifically address any issues of concern in a particular concession.

4.3.2(b) - The Tōpuni and Deed of Recognition for Aoraki (see Appendices B and C) and the Historic Resources Protocol (see Appendix D) apply here. The Director-General is required to:

- review conditions to be applied generally to new concessions;
- provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views in relation to any survey to identify the number and type of concessions that may be appropriate within the Tōpuni area;
- inform Te Rūnanga of all concession applications for the Tōpuni area;
- when issuing concessions, request that the concessionaire consult with Te Rūnanga before using the cultural information of Ngāi Tahu.

This requirement should be integrated with the monitoring programmes mentioned above.

Methods

4.3.2(a)

1. Require information from applicants and others as necessary, to enable the Department to adequately assess the potential beneficial and adverse effects of concession proposals.

2. Applications will also be considered having regard to, but not being limited by, the following provisions²:

- this management plan;
- the General Policy for National Parks;
- the purposes and other provisions of the National Parks Act 1980 and other relevant legislation;
- the status of the National Park as part of the South-West New Zealand (Te Wāhipounamu) World Heritage Area;
- the status of that part of the Park within and affected by the Aoraki/Mount Cook Tōpuni;
- the nature of the activity;
- the necessity for and the type of any structure, or facility or activity proposed;
- the effects of the proposed activity, structure or facility, including a consideration of the cumulative effects;
- the availability of alternative locations (including outside the Park);
- the ability of the applicant to carry out the activity, including any industry qualifications/standards that may exist;
- measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate potential adverse effects on the Park's natural, historic and cultural values including, but not limited to:
 - a) indigenous plants and animals and ecosystems;
 - b) archaeological and historic sites;
 - c) landscape, landforms and geological features;
 - d) natural quiet and natural darkness;
 - e) the principles and purposes on which national parks were founded;
- the outcome of consultation with Ngāi Tahu interests as a result of section 4 Conservation Act obligations and measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate potential adverse effects on Ngāi Tahu values, where these measures do not conflict with the National Parks Act (see also Method 4.3.2(b));
- any environmental impacts assessment (EIA);
- any relevant submission(s) made by the public;

² It is the applicant's responsibility to provide all relevant information in an application by reference to Part IIIB Conservation Act 1987.

- measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate potential adverse effects on recreational values, including but not limited to:
 - a) hut use and capacity. General provisions are included under the visitor management setting criteria in section 1.3.5.1. Where a concession application proposes to use a facility administered by the New Zealand Alpine Club or New Zealand Deerstarkers Association, the organisations will be notified of the concession proposal and provided sufficient time to comment;
 - b) track systems, both on and adjacent to, affected track systems;
 - c) public access;
 - d) noise levels;
 - e) public use and enjoyment of the area concerned;
 - f) a facility maintenance levy;
 - the effects (physical, social, cultural and other) on visitors in the Park when a concession activity is occurring;
 - any proposed means of advertising the concession activity within the Park.
 - the effects on both visitor and other public expectations for the preservation of national park values, that derive from the history of national park establishment.
3. Except as authorised by the Director-General, off-site³ advertising by any medium within the Park will be allowed only where it is in accordance with a concession.
4. Concessions will be monitored, in addition to other Park user monitoring, throughout the term of this Plan to determine compliance with concession provisions and establish and/or maintain baseline data on visitors and their effects on natural, historic and cultural resources and recreation opportunities.

4.3.2(b)

1. The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values in relation to managing concessions. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in policy 4.3.2(b).
2. When the Minister grants concessions that seek to use or promote Ngāi Tahu cultural information, the Minister will request that the concessionaire consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu through the tākata whenua before using that information

³ 'Off-site' includes any area of the Park not included within a concessionaire's lease, licence or permit area.

4.3.3 Aircraft and Airports

Note that section 4.3.2 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required and that in particular, Policy 4.3.2(b) and the Explanation and Methods arising from it, specify actions in respect of the interest of Ngāi Tahu in concessions.

Policies

4.3.3(a)

To allow aircraft to land anywhere in the Park where that is essential for Park management purposes, while making best endeavours to avoid or mitigate any adverse effects on Park visitors.

4.3.3(b)

Except as provided by 4.3.3(a), to require aircraft landing and taking off in the Park to have a concession. Subject to policy 4.3.3(j), aircraft landing should occur only within the approved landing sites set out in Tables 1 to 5 and Figures 5 and 5A of this plan.

4.3.3(c)

No approval should be given that would increase aircraft activity or aircraft noise within the Park.

4.3.3(d)

To encourage quieter aircraft operations.

4.3.3(e)

Concession opportunities for aircraft to land in the Park may be publicly offered by tender or other processes, through inviting applications when existing concessions terminate or at any other time, where the adverse effects can be acceptably avoided, remedied or mitigated.

4.3.3(f)

To require concessionaires to be aware of and to adhere to, the Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group Environmental Policy (1999) and Park operational procedures, and to promote the same awareness and adherence to other aircraft operators.

4.3.3(g)

Aircraft facilities and services shall be consistent, as far as possible, with the visitor management setting.

4.3.3(h)

No further aircraft facility areas should be approved in the Park.

4.3.3(i)

To allow non-commercial hang-gliders, parapents and parachutes to land or take-off within the Park.

4.3.3(j)

Aircraft may be approved to land anywhere in the Park, or be excluded from specific parts of the Park, for the purpose of commercial wild animal recovery.

Explanation

General - The term 'aircraft' in this policy section refers to fixed-wing planes, rotary-wing helicopters, microlights, balloons and gliders, as defined in the Civil Aviation Act 1990.

The operational control of aircraft in the airspace over the Park is the responsibility of the Civil Aviation Authority (CAA). In general, the CAA Rules state that aircraft shall not operate at less than 500 feet above any ground within a radius of 500 feet around the aircraft, unless they are landing, taking off or forced lower due to adverse weather. Over the Village the relevant height and radius is 1000 feet and 2000 feet respectively.

Flying in the mountain environment of the Park can be hazardous and requires consideration of weather, air turbulence, lighting, terrain, mountain flying basics and flight traffic procedures (see 'Navigating Rocks and Ice' in New Zealand Flight Safety, June 1995). Consideration of these aspects is needed both for flight safety and when setting realistic controls on aircraft use.

P.4.3.3(a) - Park management includes those works/activities necessary for the effective management of the Park. The use of aircraft is necessary to enable the efficient servicing of the Park (e.g. hut maintenance) and search and rescue operations. Aircraft undertaking authorised Park management may be permitted to land outside of designated landing sites and may also hover over the Park, but should make best endeavours to minimise any adverse effects of aircraft activity on Park visitors. Staff should notify Park visitors of such activity, where feasible.

Some huts may require the development of helicopter landing decks or pads to enable efficient hut servicing, as at Kelman Hut.

P.4.3.3(b) – Section 17ZF(5) of the Conservation Act 1987 defines landing of an aircraft, for the purposes of that section, in the following terms:

"... 'landing' includes the hovering of any aircraft and the setting down or taking on of goods or persons from an aircraft."

The Act requires that all aircraft landing in the Park, other than those permitted under policy 4.3.3(a), shall be authorised through a concession (refer to policy 4.3.2 for concessions). It enables the Minister to place the necessary conditions on aircraft operators landing in the Park in order to minimise adverse effects on the natural values of the Park and on other Park visitors.

Section 17ZF(2) of the Conservation Act 1987 requires that the concession shall be in the possession of the operator and shall have been sighted by the pilot in command of the aircraft prior to landing or taking off. It is also important that the

registrations of all aircraft permitted to land in the Park (outside of the airport) are known by the Department and that any changes are authorised by the Department in writing.

Scenic flights are a significant means of use and enjoyment of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. The flights are for scenic observation, which implies gentler flying, not thrill-seeking (see 1.3.5.2). Scenic over-flights of the Park operate with both helicopters and fixed-wing planes from outside the Park. Ski planes and helicopters land at specified glacier snowfield and ridge-top sites. Aircraft are also used for access to mountain huts for climbers, to glaciers for skiers, and for heliskiing.

The extent to which fixed-wing and rotary-wing aircraft are proportionally used depends on the tourist market, the terrain and flying distances. In Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park the industry preference is currently for fixed-wing, while the reverse is true in the adjoining Westland / Tai Poutini National Park. For both types of aircraft the management issue is their effect and it is not clear cut that one or other type has more or fewer effects.

P.4.3.3(c) & (d) - Although aircraft do provide a practical and useful means of access for Park management and visitors, with minimal physical impact on the Park compared with other mechanical methods, they do have other effects.

Such effects include impacts at particular sites and on cultural values, the disruption of natural quiet and values of solitude, space, scenic and other intrinsic values; and effects on the enjoyment, inspiration, recreation and other benefits that visitors gain from the Park, including knowing one is in a place into which aircraft are not allowed to fly or land. Many of these values are part of the visitor management setting of an area (see 1.3.5.1 Visitor Management Setting).

The principal effect of aircraft activity is its impact on natural quiet. The *Visitor Strategy* (1996) refers to natural quiet as '...the natural ambient conditions or the sound of nature'. It is an important component of visitors' appreciation of a national park. In protecting natural quiet, visitors and the tourism industry need to be aware of their responsibilities to other visitors. In particular, aircraft noise should not detract unduly from visitor experiences. In response to noise concerns, the Department, in liaison with the industry, has developed a methodology to record visitor awareness of and annoyance with, aircraft noise (see Booth, Jones and Devlin, 1997, and the monitoring reports Ladd 1998, Toxward 1999, Ladd 2000 and Horn 2001, McManaway & Bellringer 2002). Working from the methodology the Department has defined 'trigger' levels that allow preventative action to be taken as visitor dissatisfaction climbs towards or exceeds the trigger.

Tables 1 to 5 of this plan, presented at the end of this Aircraft and Airports section, list the approved landing sites within the Park and any permitted uses for each of the sites, within a wider management framework. The landing sites are also shown on Figures 5 and 5A. These permitted uses have been established based on consideration of the activities carried out by non-aircraft based Park visitors in the parts of the Park adjoining the landing sites.

P.4.3.3(e) – Aircraft use of the Park is a significant management issue. The number of aircraft authorised to land within the Park will therefore be managed at an

FIG 5: AORAKI/MT COOK AIRCRAFT LANDING SITES

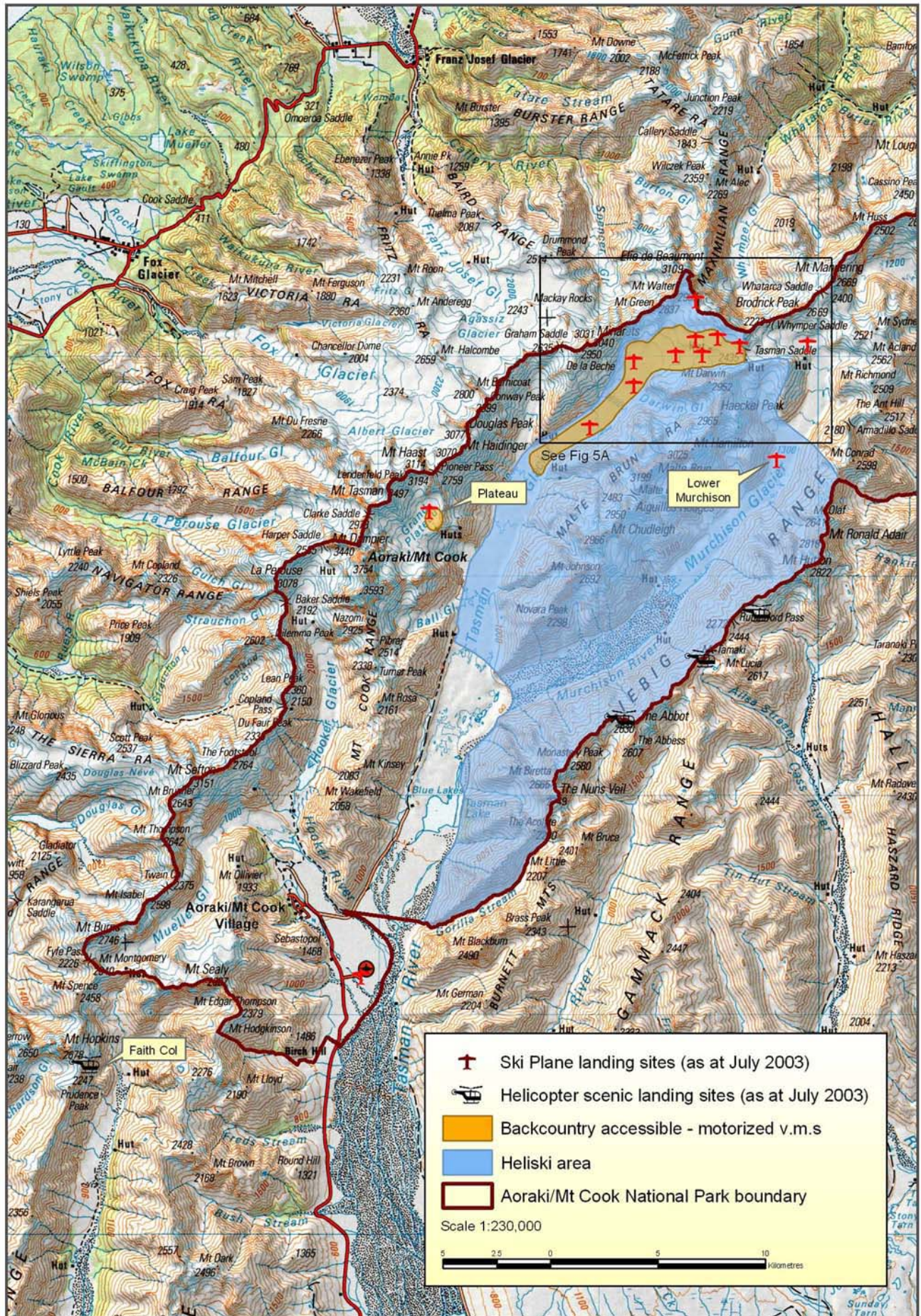
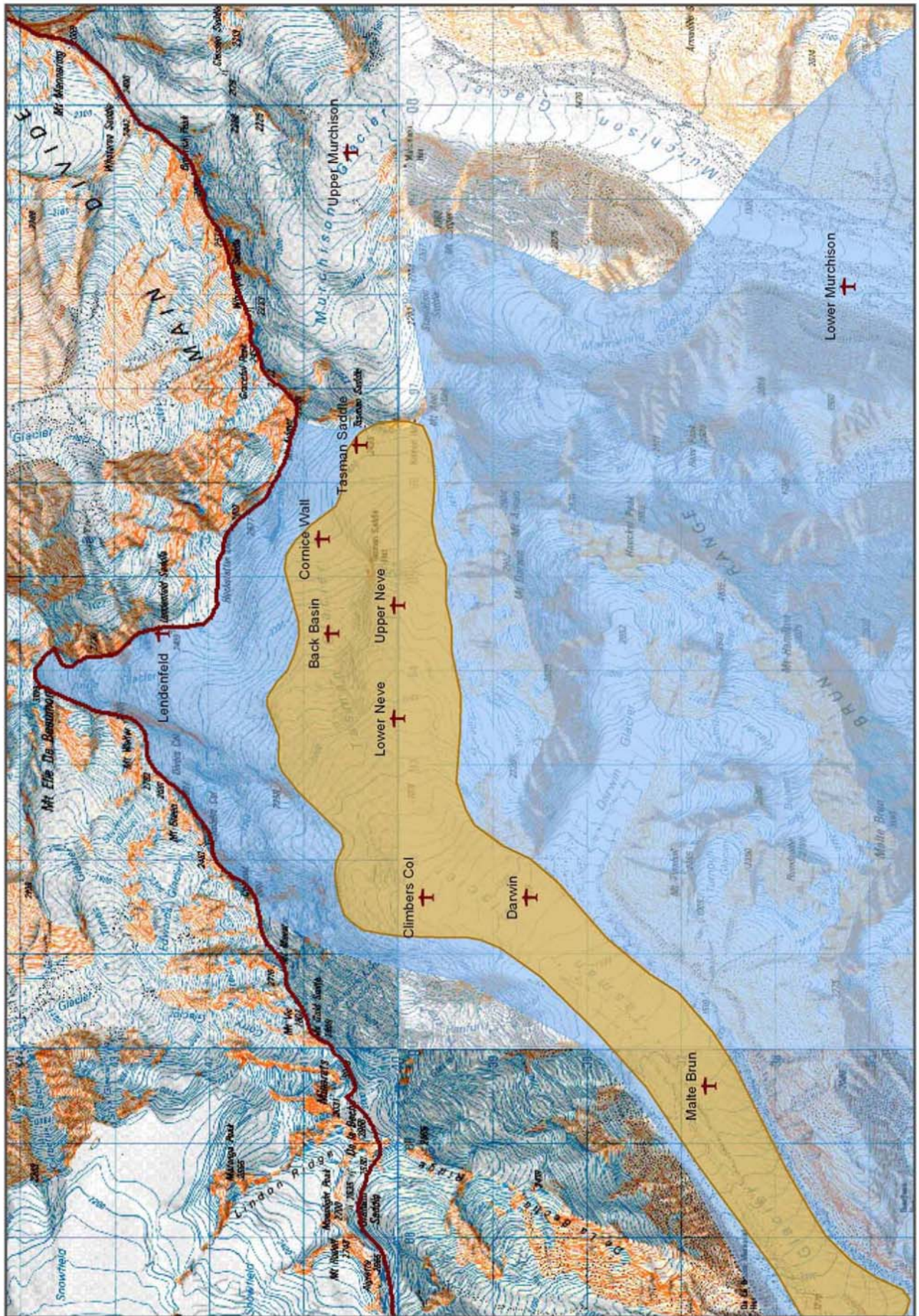


FIG 5A: AORAKI/MT COOK AIRCRAFT LANDING SITES - DETAIL



acceptable level consistent with the preservation of the Park's natural and historic values and the visitor interactions and expectations set out in Appendix J.

P.4.3.3(f) – Scenic and other aircraft traffic in both Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and Westland/Tai Poutini National Park is considerable (see above). It is recognised that the Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group (consisting of local concessionaires and other commercial operators over-flying the Parks) represents only part of the total aircraft traffic over-flying the Parks. However, the User Group has developed policies and protocols that not only seek to ensure the safety of aircraft through agreed flight paths and practices, but also address social impacts caused by aircraft on ground users.

Flight paths and practices aimed at mitigating effects on ground users are being developed in close consultation with the Department. They include revised flying heights and routes, adopting quieter flying techniques and avoiding climbers and other parties in the Park where possible. These matters are addressed through the *Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group Environmental Policy* (1999) and have been adopted by each company within the User Group. A copy of the Policy is included as Appendix H.

Requiring all aircraft concessionaires operating within or immediately adjoining the Park to adhere to the Policy will ensure that they are made aware of the formally agreed and necessary flying procedures and safety practices.

The Policy addresses adverse impacts within the Park. Should the Policy be revised at any time and no longer be consistent with the intent of this Management Plan, then the User Group should be notified as soon as possible and a decision made as to whether policy 4.3.3(f) of this Plan should still apply. A plan change would be required in consultation with the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board to remove or change this Plan policy.

P.4.3.3(g) & (h) – There are (as at 2003) three existing aircraft facility areas in the Park - the Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport, the Birch Hill grass airstrip and the Park management helipad in the Village.

The airport and the helipad are within the "Highways, roadside opportunities and visitor service sites" and the airstrip within the "front-country" visitor management settings of the Park (see 1.3.5.1 Visitor Management Settings).

Existing aircraft services (landings) are mainly to sites within the "backcountry accessible – motorized" or "backcountry walk in" visitor management settings where a level of services is appropriate, but some control is also necessary.

The ski plane concessionaire has a snow groomer at the Tasman Glacier head within the "backcountry accessible - motorized" visitor management setting, to maintain its heavily used Climbers Col landing site. The use of such a vehicle has minimal effect away from the landing site and does help contain the long-term concession ski plane activity to fewer sites.

Airdrops may be permitted within the Park for management purposes only, such as for search and rescue purposes, but not for other purposes, such as recreation, unless otherwise authorised by the Minister.

The Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport is a development of the current lease-holder, from which fixed-wing and rotary-wing (helicopter) aircraft are operated under sub-leases. National link flights are allowed and charter flights also operate. The airport is subject to a lease expiring in 2012, but with two 30-year rights of renewal.

The Birch Hill grass airstrip has been available for infrequent recreational aircraft landings for which Department consent is required, although it is not a good airstrip for pilots unfamiliar with it and its approaches. The strip is also used a few times yearly by ski planes, which having developed hydraulic problems, are unable to retract their skis for a safe landing on Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport's sealed airstrip, the nearest alternative grass airstrip being in Omarama. Justification for retaining the strip is minimal for recreational use, but retaining a very low-key, minimal structure, natural grassland airstrip for ski plane emergencies, with area-experienced pilots, is acceptable. Retaining such a strip would have minimal effect on the Park's entranceway values (see 4.1.2 Landscape Management).

The Village helipad, used for Park management purposes, is located to avoid disturbing Village visitors.

Because of previous Park policy and the concessionaire control of Aoraki/Mount Cook Airport, no helicopter base facilities (other than a landing area) have yet been provided to service concessionaire needs. Previous Park policy has also sought to avoid a proliferation of buildings and development on the limited areas of the Park accessible by road. For this reason as well as because of, the limited availability of accommodation space in the Village and the need to avoid adverse effects on visitor management settings, it is undesirable that any new aircraft operators have base facilities inside the Park.

P.4.3.3(i) – Non-commercial hang-gliders, parapents and parachutes do not require approvals in terms of the National Parks Act 1980 and the need for control of these operations is not considered to be necessary at this time. Attention is drawn to the 4.2.4 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles policy that restricts vehicles to roads, parking areas and camping areas. Fliers of hang-gliders and parapents and parachutists will be expected to take appropriate safety precautions (see 4.2.2 Recreational Activities), including contacting local aircraft operations prior to flights.

P.4.3.3(j) - The Wild Animal Control Act 1977, as amended 1997, provides for the granting of concessions to authorise wild animal recovery operations. It is acknowledged that the extermination of introduced animals, as far as possible, within the Park is consistent with section 4(2)(b) of the National Parks Act 1980, but conditions may be placed on these concessions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on other Park users. Unless otherwise stated in an approved concession document, aircraft authorised to undertake commercial wild animal control within the Park shall not be limited to the approved landing sites set out in Tables 3, 4, 5 and 6 of this Plan.

See also Method 4.1.5(a) & (b) which allows aircraft landings at Liebig Hut for recreational hunters assisting with wild animal control.

Methods

4.3.3(b), (c), (d) & (e)

1. Landing rights may be issued in accordance with the other objectives and policies and the “Management actions” in Tables 1 to 5 of this Plan and may include:

- the maximum number of permitted landings annually at any one landing site;
- the maximum number of permitted landings at any one landing site per day;
- the permitted use(s) of each landing site;
- any restrictions on the time or season for specific landing sites;
- maximum noise level emissions as measured by aircraft industry standards;
- a requirement for aircraft to shut down on landing to enable visitors to experience the Park’s alpine areas in natural quiet;
- a specified term.

2. A condition, in any concession approved for aircraft landing in the Park, should require the concessionaire to fund, or to contribute to funding and conduct, or contribute to conducting, an annual visitor monitoring programme. Such a programme is to measure the adverse effects of aircraft in the Park, using a method endorsed by the Department.

3. When concessions are being considered for aircraft scenic flight landings outside the Park the adverse effects of such flights over the Park should be a concession consideration. In particular, this will apply to the Mueller and Hooker valleys and to the Murchison Valley should monitoring indicate a problem. Quieter aircraft will be encouraged, favoured or required.

4.3.3(f)

1. Maintain a close working relationship with the Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group and the Civil Aviation Authority of New Zealand to assist in the management of adverse aircraft effects in the Park.

2. Recommend a condition, in any concession approved for landing aircraft within the Park, which encourages the concessionaire to be a member of the Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group and requires the concessionaire to comply with the *Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group Environmental Policy* (1999) and all other provisions of this plan.

4.3.3(g)

Require the ski plane concessionaire to seek a concession for the location and operation of the snow groomer at the Tasman Glacier (Climbers Col) landing site. Recommend to the Minister that the use of the snow groomer

at this heavily-used landing site is appropriate within the relevant visitor management setting.

4.3.3(j)

Any concession approved for commercial wild animal recovery, should contain a condition requiring that the concessionaire notify the Department and the Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group in writing of the approximate period during which they will be operating within the Park, and provide a description and registration number of the aircraft to be used.

Explanation of Methods

Because of the complexity of this Aircraft and Airports section an 'Explanation of Methods' is also provided.

M.4.3.3(b), (c), (d) & (e)

1. The current concession for commercial fixed-wing aircraft operations resident in the Park extends well beyond the term of this reviewed management plan. Additional concessions for operators wishing to have an operational base in the Park or wishing to use Aoraki/Mount Cook airport, will be considered only where they can gain access to the airport, because of the policy restrictions on additional aircraft facility areas. An exception to this will be airport use on a temporary or casual basis, which is permitted in terms of the existing lease. Amendments to this lease are subject to negotiations with the Minister and will need to take into account the matters within 4.3.2 Concessions General, as would any new concession. Non-commercial fliers may make their own private arrangements with the airport operator.

2. For the purpose of this Plan, the baseline against which aircraft effects will be measured is the year 2001 level of aircraft use. This level of use has been generally constant since 1998 when the yearly aircraft monitoring began. Landing right quota has been based on measures to limit adverse effects. Annual aircraft landings authorised within the Park should be limited to:

- the allowed 7000 Pilatus/Cessna ski plane landings of the current renewable concession or some lesser or equivalent passenger carrying capacity should a change of aircraft type be requested by the concessionaire. In fact only just over 5000 of these allowed landings occur annually as at 2002 and there is no indication of a significant future increase in these landings;
- an unspecified, but still 'limited', number of helicopter landings approved through concessions to approved operators for up to 5-year terms for the purposes of positioning recreationists⁴ and filming only. Landings should be limited to the landing sites in Tables 1 to 4. The limitation on the number of landings for positioning recreationists comes from the more or less constant yearly number of mountaineers and skiers entering the Park over the past 20

⁴ "positioning recreationists" means the flying-in of people who are fully equipped for mountaineering and/or skiing and for staying overnight in a high-altitude alpine environment.

years, although monitoring will be undertaken to determine the extent of any change in the use of aircraft for access;

- landings for a helisking concession operation at locations within the landing area in Figure 5;
- a minor use of TALPs (temporary aircraft landing permits) for pre-flight approvals for aircraft landings and/or for purposes not covered by the above (e.g. for utility servicing or research purposes), subject to the policies of this Plan.

The above landings are based around the current aircraft use patterns. Should circumstances change, such as deteriorating snow conditions making ski plane use more restrictive and hence helicopter use more favoured, or changed or different recreational activities seeking different aircraft use patterns, then the Department may reassess the above landing limits in accordance with the objectives and policies of this Plan.

3. Landing numbers, frequencies and times at landing sites will be considered in recognition of the visitor management settings and Tables 1 to 5.

4. Additional landing opportunities should be granted only where:

- the concession applicant or existing operator can demonstrate through the results of monitoring that their proposed operation will not result in adverse effects (including cumulative effects) on the Park or Park visitors; and
- the concession applicant or existing operator complies with all relevant legislation and the relevant objectives and policies of this Plan; or
- the Minister authorises additional aircraft to land within the Park in accordance with policies 4.3.3(a) or (i).

5. Where a concession applicant proposes to operate a type of aircraft within the Park that is different from existing authorised aircraft, the applicant will be required to demonstrate that the aircraft will not create a greater adverse effect than the existing aircraft types. This acknowledges the advances that existing operators have made to reduce the noise of their aircraft and seeks to ensure that these advances are not lost. A significant consideration when looking at changes in aircraft type will be the desirability for scenic flight aircraft to shut down their engines after landing, so that visitors can experience natural quiet.

6. The monitoring of aircraft impacts within the Park shall be in accordance with guidelines in *The Effects of Aircraft Overflights on Recreationists in Natural Settings* (Booth, Jones and Devlin, 1997) or other guidelines approved in writing by the Department.

When monitoring indicates a problem, then it will be addressed in accordance with method 4.3.3(f) and at the expiry of a concession via paragraph 7 following.

7. Landing opportunity concessions may be publicly offered through inviting applications when existing concessions terminate or where the results of monitoring indicate that additional aircraft could be permitted to land within the Park without creating an unacceptable adverse effect. Where the results of this monitoring indicate that the level of adverse effects is unacceptable, i.e. 25% or more of visitors reporting dissatisfaction with aircraft, new landing opportunity concessions should not be granted.

Where landing opportunity concessions are publicly offered through inviting applications, each concession application received will be assessed and scored against weighted attributes that will be advised at the time of notification and that may include, but are not limited to:

- qualifications and standards. The applicant meets CAA rules, including part 119 and 135 requirements of the CAA rules or other such standards as CAA may require;
- measures that a concession applicant may take to reduce adverse effects on Park values and visitors. Such examples may include new technologies or CAA approved flying practices;
- previous aircraft operational record. Where a concession application is received from an operator who has previously operated within the Park, particular regard shall be had to any efforts undertaken to mitigate the adverse effects of their aircraft on Park values and visitors. Where a concession application is received from an operator who has not operated within the Park previously, evidence should be sought from the applicant that demonstrates efforts undertaken to mitigate the adverse effects of their aircraft during previous operations, where possible.

Approved landing sites are those set out in Tables 1 to 5 of this plan.

Each landing opportunity concession should be limited to a term not exceeding five years to enable the results of monitoring to be incorporated into concessions, where necessary.

M.4.3.3(f)

1. Following consultation with the Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group during the review of this plan, the User Group confirmed that if the Department indicated those areas of the Park which it would prefer aircraft to avoid or to fly high over, it would seek to address these concerns.

Areas of concern addressed by the User Group include not flying in close proximity to the summit of Aoraki/Mount Cook or any of the other major peaks on the Main Divide, particularly when climbers are seen en-route.

To ensure that other areas of concern can be identified throughout the life of this plan, any complaints received by the Department regarding aircraft operating in or over the Park shall be forwarded in writing to the chairperson of the User Group and a copy put on the relevant file (the names and addresses of complainants should be deleted unless they agree otherwise). The User Group has confirmed that it will treat all complaints seriously and will address concerns raised.

The Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group and CAA have invested considerable time and effort in the review of this plan. This professional relationship will be fostered.

2. Concessionaires' compliance with the User Group environmental policy will ensure that all concessions authorised to land within the Park will be aware of the User Group and their procedures for flying within the Park. These flight paths and heights have been established not only for safety, but to mitigate the adverse effects of aircraft on Park visitors. The Department will require any concessionaire

operating aircraft, who is new to the Park, to meet with the User Group to ensure a full briefing is received on local flying protocols.

M.4.3.3(j) - Aircraft authorised to operate within the Park for the purposes of wild animal control are likely to hover or land in areas outside of “approved landing sites”. It is therefore important that the Department and the User Group know when aircraft will be operating for wild animal control purposes within the Park

The concessionaire shall notify the Department and the User Group of the aircraft to be used and approximate times they will be operating within the Park each month. The Department shall record the aircraft movements and aircraft registration and make this information available to the public through the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Visitor Centre.

TABLE 1: LOWER TASMAN/HOOKER AIRCRAFT

	Lower Tasman & Lower Hooker valleys	Birch Hill airstrip	Mount Cook Airport
Visitor management settings	Backcountry ‘walk in’ & bc accessible - motorized; Front country; Highways etc.	Front country	Highways etc.
Description	Glacial, terminal lakes, moraine, fluvial-glacial outwash plain and lower glacial walls and braided riverbeds with grass, shrub, tussocklands, silver beech, alpine plants and herb fields.		
Recreational use	Sightseeing, scenic drives, shopping, dining, camping, 4WD tours, boat tours, art, picnicking, photography, cross country skiing, mountain biking, nature study, walking, education, special events (festivals), parapenting, ski-mountaineering		
Purpose	To enable visitors to experience a moderate to high degree of natural environment experience, although the sights and sounds of civilisation may pervade in many areas.		
Permitted uses/activities	Scenic overflights	Emergency ski plane landings only	Commuter & scenic flights, loading point for other aircraft related activities.
Management actions	Monitor aircraft noise to ensure altitude restrictions over Village are effective.	Monitor emergency use and fire risk.	-Recognise as aircraft service area. -Monitor overall noise levels.

TABLE 2.1: TASMAN AIRCRAFT

	Tasman backcountry accessible –motorized area	Lendenfeld
Visitor management settings	Backcountry accessible – motorized (see Figure 4 & section 4.2.1)	Backcountry remote
Description	Glacier, peaks, neve, icefalls, snowfields.	
Recreational Use	Mountain craft instruction, guided skiing/day skiing, ski-mountaineering, climbing, photography/filming.	
Purpose	To enable visitors to experience the Park’s alpine areas and be positioned within the park for a range of alpine recreation activities.	
Permitted uses/activities	Scenic snow landing, filming, positioning recreationists.	
Management actions	Monitor noise, flight paths. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Kelman Hut landing pad is for Park management purposes only. - Require a concession for locating and operating a snow groomer at the Climbers Col site. 	

TABLE 2.2 TASMAN AIRCRAFT

	Plateau Hut
Visitor management settings	Backcountry accessible – motorized (see Figure 4 & section 4,2,1)
Description	Glacier, peaks, neve, icefalls, snowfields.
Recreational use	Mountain craft instruction, guided skiing/day skiing, ski-mountaineering, climbing, photography/filming.
Purpose	To enable visitors to experience the Park's alpine areas and be positioned within the Park for a range of alpine recreation activities.
Permitted uses/activities	Scenic snow landing, filming, positioning recreationists.
Management actions	Monitor noise, flight paths.

TABLE 3: MUELLER AND HOOKER AIRCRAFT

	Mueller Valley	Hooker Valley
Visitor management settings	Backcountry 'walk in', accessible – motorized, remote and more-remote.	
Description	Glacier, peaks, moraine, neve, terraces, icefalls, snowfields and screes with alpine herb fields, mosses and lichens.	
Recreational use	Mountain craft instruction, ski-mountaineering, kayak tours, climbing, tramping, photography/filming nature study.	Walking, picnics, tramping, art, nature study, photography/filming, hunting, climbing, ski-mountaineering
Purpose	To enable visitors to have close contact with nature, with minimal aircraft interaction.	To enable visitors to have close contact with nature, with minimal aircraft & human interaction, especially in upper valley.
Permitted uses/activities	Management and wild animal control, positioning recreationists at Barron Saddle	Management and wild animal control only
Management actions	Advocate for and/or require over-flight height limits and quieter aircraft. Specify a southern flight area to/from the Barron Saddle landing site.	Advocate for and/or require over-flight height limits and quieter aircraft. Monitor natural quiet to ensure any limits are effective. Seek aircraft avoidance of or higher minimum flight heights over Harper Saddle.

TABLE 4: MURCHISON & GODLEY AIRCRAFT

	Lower Murchison Valley	Murchison Glacier	Godley
Visitor management settings	Backcountry remote		Backcountry walk in, accessible– motorized, remote and more-remote
Description	Glacial outwash, moraine, screes, terminal lake, terraces, icefalls, with mosses, lichens, alpine herbs, sub-alpine shrublands and silver beech.	Glacier, peaks, neve, icefalls, icecliffs.	Glacial outwash, moraine, screes, terminal lake, terraces, icefalls, riverbeds, with mosses, lichens, alpine herbs, sub-alpine shrublands and silver beech.
Recreational use	Hunting, mountain craft instruction, climbing, ski-mountaineering, tramping, photography & filming, nature study.	Climbing, mountain craft instruction, ski-mountaineering, photography & filming.	Hunting, climbing, ski-mountaineering, tramping, 4WD.
Purpose	To enable visitors to have close contact with nature, with minimal human interaction, though air access may be used. Outdoor skills, challenge and risk are very important.		To enable visitors to have close contact with nature, with minimal aircraft & human interaction. Outdoor skills, challenge and risk are very important.
Permitted uses/activities	Positioning recreational hunters (see Method 4.1.5(a) & (b))	Positioning recreationalists, filming, scenic snow landings	Wild animal control and management only.
Management actions	Monitor adverse effects from overflights & landings on Liebig Range. No helicopter landings within 50 metres of Liebig Hut.		Seek overflight operators recognition of remote values, including natural quiet.

TABLE 5: HELISKIING AREA.

	Tasman and Murchison Valleys
Visitor management setting	Backcountry remote and backcountry accessible – motorized
Description	Glacier, peaks, neve, icefalls and snowfields.
Recreational use	Mountain craft instruction, guided skiing/day skiing, ski-mountaineering, climbing, photography/filming.
Purpose	To enable visitors to experience the Park's alpine areas and be positioned within the Park for heliskiing activities.
Permitted use/activity	Heliskiing
Management actions	Specify minimum landing distances from huts, as in Tables 2.1 and 4. Clarify any required approvals distinction between 'heliskiing' and 'extreme downhill skiing events'. Note 1.3.5.2 Visitor Groups. Specify concession conditions to avoid heliski use conflict with other, ground-based, visitors in the park, both in the location and timing of activities.

4.3.4 Guiding

Note that section 4.3.2 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required and that, in particular, Policy 4.3.2(b) and the Explanation and Methods arising from it, specify actions in respect of the interest of Ngāi Tahu in concessions.

Policy

4.3.4(a)

To consider guiding concessions within the Park subject to the following or any additional criteria:

- the proposed operation's consistency with the visitor management setting(s) within which the activity is to be undertaken;
- the provision of a concessionaire safety plan;
- the applicant's demonstrated ability to provide accurate interpretation on the Park's values.

4.3.4(b)

Between 30 November and 1 May each year, only one concessionaire group of a specified maximum size should be permitted to stay at Mueller Hut or associated camping areas on any one night and that such concessionaires be administered on a booking system.

Explanation

4.3.4(a)

1. Guiding as covered by this policy takes a number of forms. In the lower altitude parts of the Park it can include bus tours and guided walks, while in the alpine areas it can include climbing ascents, climbing instruction courses, ski mountaineering and pass crossings.

When assessing applications for guiding, consideration should be given to the visitor management setting(s) within which the activity is to occur. It is important that concession activities are consistent with and do not dominate these setting(s).

2. Professional alpine guides provide for a greater public use and enjoyment of the Park than might otherwise be obtained. They provide the skills and experience necessary to guide clients through some of New Zealand's most challenging alpine terrain. In addition, clients gain an appreciation of the Park's natural, historic and cultural values and often learn the necessary skills to undertake alpine activities by themselves. Due to the nature of the Park's alpine conditions it is essential that alpine guides are appropriately qualified. The New Zealand Mountain Guides Association currently certifies guides and can advise of suitable standards.

Industry qualifications/standards for some other concession activities are still being established. Where an industry standard has been set, the Department will support this. For all guiding concessions the Department requires a concessionaire safety plan, in all cases audited by an independent auditor. This requirement helps ensure that Park visitors are purchasing a professional service when guided within the Park.

3. The Department will always seek the provision of accurate interpretation of the Park's values from guiding concessionaires. In addition Ngāi Tahu will also request this in respect of Ngāi Tahu cultural information (see Policy and Method 4.3.2(b)).

4.3.4(b) – This policy does not apply to existing alpine guiding concessionaires who typically guide climbers in the Park and operate in groups of fewer than five people. The policy may apply at such time as these concessions are renewed.

Hut and nearby camping statistics for Mueller Hut identify a potential, if not actual, overcrowding issue. The construction of a new, larger hut in 2002/03 and associated camping is expected to draw attention from guided visitor groups, as has happened at Welcome Flat in the adjoining Westland/Tai Poutini National Park. This could exacerbate any overcrowding issue. The hut is already receiving high use for the period from November through to May each year, with overcrowding being experienced from December to February and again around Easter. A restriction on concessionaire use will be introduced if and when needed, to help reduce crowding during this period.

Any one concessionaire may book two nights in any seven-day period, a maximum of eight nights in any one calendar month for the restricted season (November - May), for a maximum party size of 6 clients plus guide, with no concessionaire lockers to be allowed. Bookings would be accepted up to one year in advance. This does not enable a concessionaire to book bunk space, but simply ensures that only one concessionaire will be at Mueller Hut on any one night. A booking system for all users of the hut may be introduced (see policy 4.2.7a), but this does not necessarily follow from introducing a concessionaire system.

The maximum concessionaire party size equates to one quarter of the hut's public use accommodation. This is considered the desirable limit for the time being given the former hut's (12+ person occupancy) frequent overcrowding by predominantly independent visitors and the Department's desire to maintain and increase this independent recreational opportunity. If the future reveals periods when less-than-full hut use is apparent, a relaxation of concessionaire limits may be considered. Concessionaire lockers will not be allowed as many concessionaires may use the hut, hut space is limited, and part of the recreational opportunity experience is being a backcountry adventurer (see 1.3.5.2) with a degree of equipment independence.

To ensure that there are fair and reasonable opportunities for companies to undertake guiding to Mueller Hut, the Minister may publicly tender the concession opportunity when it becomes available and limit the time period of concessions.

Concession fees will be set in accordance with the Department's standard operating procedure and will not be the primary condition of tender.

For alpine accommodation needs generally, see 4.2.7 Huts.

Method

4.3.4(b)

Applications to guide to the Mueller Hut and camping area may be publicly invited through a tender process, as existing concessions terminate. The term of the concessions should not exceed 5 years and not include rights of renewal.

4.3.5 Existing Club Lodges

Policy

4.3.5

The retention within the Park of existing club lodges where the club exists for an approved Park activity and the building receives a significant level of appropriate use for that activity, should be allowed by means of concessions.

Explanation

4.3.5 - There are three club lodges in the Park. These are:

- Unwin Hut – a group of several buildings beside SH 80 (NZ Alpine Club);
- Wyn Irwin Hut – just north of Foliage Hill (Canterbury Mountaineering Club);
- Thar Lodge – also just north of Foliage Hill (NZ Deerstalkers Association).

Club lodges have a privileged position in the Park, in that club members have priority or exclusive use of them. This is in contrast to the club-owned mountain huts, which are available to the public, as well as to club members (see 4.2.7 Huts).

This policy applies only to the existing club lodges. Any other club wishing to establish a lodge should apply for a site in the Village (see 6.1.1 Village Layout and Site Allocation).

Clubs that have lodges in the Park are expected to make full use of their facilities as a base for the activities for which the club exists. If they fail to do so, or if substantial use is occurring for non-club activities, then the reasons for the presence of the lodge in the Park, especially separate from the Village-provided accommodation areas, are brought into question.

As was common in national parks and conservation areas, the lodges have permits issued on the discretion of the Minister, but none of the three existing lodges has a concession. Nationally this situation is changing and concessions are being required, primarily to ensure that the lodges and their activities are managed consistently with other structures and activities within the parks and areas and with the legislation.

Clubs are obliged to abide by the requirements of the Mackenzie District Council regarding building permits, licensing as residential institutions and fire safety measures. See also 4.3.9 New and Existing Buildings.

To maintain standards for the lodges, minor additions or alterations that improve the service offered to club members, but which do not increase the amount of accommodation, may be permitted. Any alterations, additions or replacements will have to be in accordance with 4.3.9 New and Existing Buildings, a concession and any local body requirements.

Method

4.3.5

Advise the clubs of the need for concessions, process their concession applications and cancel the existing permits.

4.3.6 Utilities and Easements

Note that section 4.3.2 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required and that in particular, Policy 4.3.2(b) and the Explanation and Methods arising from it, specify actions in respect of the interest of Ngāi Tahu in concessions.

Policy

4.3.6

To consider applications to place utilities and easements in the Park where:

- their purposes are essential for the public good and cannot reasonably be achieved outside the Park;
- the use is not inconsistent with the Park's visitor management setting(s) within which the utility or easement is to be located;
- their adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Explanation

4.3.6 - Utilities and easements include:

- telecommunication sites and lines;
- hydrological and weather stations;
- water supply pipelines;
- sewerage system pipelines;
- transmission lines and associated structures;
- access ways (roads and tracks).

Communications between the Village, Airport and the rest of the country traverse the Park. There are radio facilities at the Visitor Centre and Airport, television and Department radio translators on Wakefield Ridge and underground telephone lines alongside State Highway 80. Electric transmission is by overhead lines to a sub-station behind Unwin Hut, then underground to and around the Village.

Hydrological and/or weather recording stations are located at various sites in the Park, providing information for the Department, NIWA, Meridian Energy and Environment Canterbury. These stations aid Park management and safe concession activity and provide advance notice of river flows for the downstream Waitaki River and hydroelectric power system.

For the upper Godley more-remote part of the "remote" visitor management setting area of the Park, utilities or easements should be permitted only where the proposed activity will not have any adverse effects and it is not possible to locate the utility elsewhere. This "remote" setting is managed as an area of minimal modification and the presence of utilities are likely to have adverse effects on the Park's natural values and on the visitor experience. The existing NIWA hydrological gauge on Panorama Ridge in the Godley Valley should be retained as an existing use exception.

Roads to communication facilities should not be permitted (see 4.2.4 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles); developments should be capable of construction and

maintenance by helicopter. The Minister may approve one-off landings in the Park for undertaking essential works to utilities, in accordance with policy 4.3.3(b).

Solar power with standby batteries is preferred for all powered facilities. Where electric supply is necessary its placement underground may be required.

The placement of survey monuments will be constrained to permanent ground marks. Beacons erected for particular projects should be removed when projects are completed. Minimal clearing of vegetation may be permitted when carried out under the supervision of the Department.

In all but exceptional circumstances, telephone lines should be underground. Above-ground radio and telephone facilities at the Airport may need to be made particularly visible as an aircraft safety measure, but in general, facilities should be designed and painted to blend into the environment, as far as possible.

The television and radio translators on Wakefield Ridge should retain their unobtrusive appearance.

General guidance for the assessment of utility and easement applications is provided in sections 5.4.2.2 and 5.4.2.4 of the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy 2000*.

The utility provisions listed are to be considered in addition to the general concession provisions. They provide specific guidance to help minimise any potential adverse effects on the Park's natural, historic and cultural values.

The policies and objectives of this Plan will identify other key factors that need to be considered when assessing an application. Examples include design principles, archaeological sites and adverse effects on the Park's natural, historic and Ngāi Tahu values and on the visitor experience.

Method

4.3.6

Process applications for utilities and easements in accordance with the provisions in 4.3.2 Concessions General and give effect to the following provisions:

- Ensure that utilities are consistent with the relevant legislation, the visitor management setting criteria and the other policies and objectives of this plan;
- New and existing telecommunication operators are to co-site on existing sites, where technically possible and use designs that will minimise visual and other effects. This may require a concession provision requiring the operator to upgrade the site with improved technology, as it becomes available;
- Public access will be preserved, except in exceptional circumstances, where access conflicts with public safety;
- The maintenance and construction of facilities will be carried out through access from existing roads, on foot or by helicopter, wherever practicably possible.

- Removal of obsolete structures and buildings from the site as technology changes and restoration of the sites if no longer used, will be required;
- All sites will be kept in a clean, tidy and well-maintained state;
- Sites subject to a concession will be kept to the minimum area necessary for the utility;
- Above-ground utility services will be avoided, where practicable.

4.3.7 Stone/Gravel Removal and Mining

Policy

4.3.7(a)

To consider applications where necessary and otherwise allow stone and gravel removal from approved sites within the Park, for building, roading, tracks, river protection works and/or maintenance purposes in the Park.

4.3.7(b)

To consider applications for stone and gravel removal from approved sites within the Park for the essential construction and maintenance of State Highway 80 adjoining or within close proximity to the Park.

Explanation

4.3.7(a) & (b) - Exempt from the Crown Minerals Act 1991 restrictions is the removal of Crown owned minerals (which include gravel and rock) from the Park for use in the Park for any reasonable domestic, road making or building purpose (section 8(2) of Act). Also exempt is the removal of any sand, shingle or other natural material from the bed of a river or a lake, these removals being covered by section 13 of the Resource Management Act and administered by Environment Canterbury.

Section 50(2) of the National Parks Act 1980 allows for the collection of stone, gravel or similar substances found in the Park, for use in the construction of buildings or facilities. The large volume and replenishing nature of material in riverbeds makes this possible with minimal environmental impact.

During the 1999 construction of the stopbanks along the banks of Glencoe and Black Birch streams to provide flood protection to the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, material was taken from the riverbeds of Glencoe and Hoophorn streams. For stopbank work of this nature and for roads, tracks, buildings and other uses in the Park, it is important that local stone and gravel is used wherever possible, to retain the geological integrity of the Park and its associated environs (e.g. by avoiding incongruous stone colours).

The management of State Highway 80 requires the removal of stone and gravel build-up in riverbeds within the Park upstream and downstream of highway bridges. For both the integrity reason above and to avoid invasive weed introductions, it is better that this material is used for highway construction and maintenance, rather than bringing material into the Park environs from areas outside the Park.

Prospecting or exploring for, or mining of Crown owned minerals, is generally administered under the Crown Minerals Act 1991. Mining operators are required to gain a minerals permit from the Minister of Commerce, resource consent from the local authority and landowner consent by way of an "access arrangement". A 1997 amendment to the Crown Minerals Act does however, effectively prohibit access arrangements within national parks, for all but very low impact activities.

Given its geology, the Park is unlikely to receive attention for exploration or prospecting.

Methods

4.3.7(a)

Consent may be granted, by concession where needed, for the collection and use of stone, gravel or similar substances, in approved buildings and their associated access (see 4.3.9 New and Existing Buildings and 6.2.10 Buildings and Architectural Standards), or for the construction of Park roads, Park tracks and stopbanks. Collection should be on an occasional basis from sites which are as far as possible away from public use areas and areas of introduced plant infestation (see 4.1.4 Introduced Plants). The most suitable sites are active riverbeds, where periodic flooding can erase any sign of the extraction. Potential adverse effects must be considered (see 4.2.10 Environmental Protection and 4.3.2 Concessions General, as appropriate), particularly of vehicle access to the site (see 4.2.4 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles).

Consent under the Resource Management Act 1991 will be obtained, where applicable.

4.3.7(b)

Consent may be granted by concession for the collection and removal of stone, gravel or similar substances for use in the construction and maintenance by Transit New Zealand of State Highway 80 (see 4.2.3 Recreational Facility Management, and 4.2.4 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles). Collection will be subject to the same criteria as for the collection of material for building and other purposes.

Consent under the Resource Management Act 1991 will be obtained, where applicable.

4.3.8 Grazing

Policy

4.3.8

Livestock grazing within the Park should be phased out.

Explanation

4.3.8 - While grazing is not considered to be in keeping with the primary purpose of the National Parks Act 1980, it can be permitted under Section 51 of the Act and in accordance with the General Policy for National Parks. For areas that have been traditionally grazed, a management plan may make provision for grazing, under specific terms.

The Birch Hill flats were, at one time, part of a pastoral occupation licence that reverted to the Crown and became part of the Mount Cook National Park when gazetted in 1953. Grazing continued to be authorised in this area of the Park, up to the Unwin Hut to Hooker Corner fenceline, until the 1989 Mount Cook National Park Management Plan sought to phase it out. This policy was revised in a 1991-95 review (see Mount Cook National Park Management Plan Proposed Grazing Amendment Birch Hill Flats 1991). This review recognised the difficulties of Park boundary fencing to exclude straying stock, the reduced natural values of the main grazed area and then allowed for grazing subject to a concession, with monitoring and other conditions (see the 1995 plan amendment). No concession was taken up, but informal grazing has continued.

During the 1991-95 review, an issue not fully addressed was vehicles on the sealed State Highway through the Park from time to time colliding with straying stock. To avoid this either the highway would need to be fenced, as it is through the adjoining Glentanner pastoral run or the stock removed. Fencing of SH 80 passing through the Park is unlikely to be acceptable on landscape, public access and other park objective grounds, the adverse landscape impact of fencing having been recognised in the 1991-95 review. This reinforces that grazing in the Park must cease.

A solution may lie in the Crown Pastoral Land Act 1998 tenure review process for the adjoining pastoral run, from which the grazing stock originate. In particular, grazing on lands adjoining the Park may cease, in which case grazing within the Park can and will also cease. The tenure review outcome should soon occur and informal grazing could be tolerated (with liability/risk minimising measures) until the grazing can cease.

Failure to find a solution through the tenure review process would mean requiring a concession application, as agreed in the 1995 review, with particular attention on visitor safety and liability issues.

Following any phase-out period for grazing, wandering stock will be covered by the 4.1.5 Introduced Animals and Domestic Animals policies.

Methods

4.3.8

1. The Department will work with the adjoining pastoral runholder through the tenure review process to find a solution that prevents stock straying into the National Park.

2. Until such time as a solution under 1 above is found and implemented, the Department will liaise with Transit New Zealand and the runholder to minimise the risk of vehicle/stock collisions.

3. Should a solution under 1 above not be found, then a concession for grazing should be sought, subject to the following matters, as established through the 1995 plan review. An additional requirement will be to address the issue of stock control, visitor safety and accident liability. The 1995 plan review matters include:

- a concession of no more than five years' duration for sheep grazing. In considering whether to issue a licence, full consideration will be given to the grazing policy in the *General Policy for National Parks* and the impacts of the concession on the National Park values;
- any concession must meet all of the following criteria;
 - a) no more than one grazing concession may be issued at one time;
 - b) an environmental monitoring programme will be established. This will include an assessment of native vegetation composition and diversity. This will provide factual information to assess the impacts of grazing in the Park;
 - c) appropriate conditions will be set and enforced regarding sheep numbers, grazing period, area and fencing;
- any concession for grazing will not be re-issued if the environmental monitoring programme demonstrates that approved grazing has resulted in:
 - a) significant environmental deterioration;
 - b) prevention of significant native vegetation regeneration;
- the boundaries of the area where the concession may be considered will generally be the Tasman River, the southern boundary of the Park, the existing fenceline on the hill slope between the Sawyers and Hoophorn Streams, the terrace below the existing fenceline on the hill slope south of the Hoophorn Stream and a line across the flats between Unwin Hut and Hooker Corner, but excluding Unwin Hut and Mount Cook Airport. The fence south of the Hoophorn Stream will be required to be moved down-slope to reduce the landscape impact;
- boundaries will be such that any fencing along them will, as far as possible, have minimal impact on the landscape quality of the Park;
- to avoid the need for highly visible roadside fencing along State Highway 80 the support and co-operation of Transit New Zealand will

be sought for the retention of a cattle stop across the road at Unwin Hut, as long as grazing continues;

- any concession for grazing will allow for areas to be excluded from grazing if any of the following occurs:
 - a) a need develops for additional picnic or roadside stopping areas (see 4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters);
 - b) if there is a need to provide facilities or permit other concession activities on areas being grazed;
 - c) any historic site management is required (see 4.1.6 Historic Resources);
 - d) any flora or fauna management monitoring is required.

4.3.9 New and Existing Buildings

Note that section 4.3.2 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required and that in particular, Policy 4.3.2(b) and the Explanation and Methods arising from it, specify actions in respect of the interest of Ngāi Tahu in concessions.

Policies

4.3.9(a)

To keep buildings and structures outside the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village amenities area, to a minimum.

4.3.9(b)

To ensure that where buildings are necessary in the Park, they are compatible with and appropriate to, the landscape and visitor management setting in which they are to be located.

4.3.9(c)

To require new public buildings adjacent to Park roads to provide access and basic facilities for people with disabilities. Other Park facilities, including public buildings already existing, should cater for people with disabilities, where feasible.

4.3.9(d)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu, as expressed in the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.3.9(a) & (b) - The National Park is an area of predominantly natural values. Outside of the Village amenities area, the Park should not have any more buildings or permanent structures than are essential for the enjoyment of the outdoor environment or the safety of the visiting public or for management purposes.

These policies are in addition to the concessions requirement of section 17U(4) Conservation Act 1987 which requires the consideration of other potential locations or the use of an existing structure.

The Department's Visitor Asset Management Programme (VAMP) defines the required design standards for all structures available for use by the public on land administered by the Department. Nothing in this Plan allows for lesser standards to be used in the Park.

It is important that the natural landscapes are not compromised by development. All designs should be consistent with the visitor management setting and developments should harmonise with the landscape and enhance people's experience of it. A general guide is as follows:

- materials which relate the structure to the site will wherever possible, be selected; and

- the design should recognise where appropriate, historical and cultural elements which are present in the landscape.

These criteria also apply to renovations of existing buildings.

Proposals for the development of new facilities must be accompanied by a landscape analysis identifying the potential impact of the development on the Park's natural landscape values.

Alpine huts are acknowledged as a traditional use of the Park. Their design needs to reflect the snow and wind loading requirements.

4.3.9(c) - The legislative requirement for the provision of access for people with disabilities to public buildings applies to both Crown and non-Crown buildings. The access required is that which is suitable for wheelchairs.

4.3.9(d) – In addition to the section 4.3.2 Concessions general provisions, the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki has further applicability here. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views in relation to the location, construction and relocation of any structures or huts within the Tōpuni area.

Method

4.3.9(d)

The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values in relation to the location, construction and relocation of any structures or huts within the Tōpuni area. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tākata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in policy 4.3.9(d).

4.3.10 Promotional Activities, Filming, Photography and Art Painting

Note that section 4.3.2 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required and that, in particular, Policy 4.3.2(b) and the Explanation and Methods arising from it, specify actions in respect of the interest of Ngāi Tahu in concessions.

Policies

4.3.10(a)

Such activities above should be consistent with the visitor management settings and existing access, having regard to their effects both positive and adverse and whether their adverse effects can be adequately avoided, remedied or mitigated, in each case having regard to the purposes of the National Parks Act.

4.3.10(b)

All such activities above that would not be consistent with the visitor management settings or existing access, should be considered only in conjunction with public notification or where adequate public consultation has been clearly demonstrated.

Explanation

4.3.10(a) & (b) – The activity of filming and photography ranges in scale from just one or two persons and hand-carried equipment for a few hours, to groups of ten to thirty persons for a few days, to many people for weeks or months, such as for feature films. As the scale increases, so does the amount of auxiliary equipment, vehicles, temporary buildings and aircraft use and the overall scale of effect. The cumulative number of activities also increases the scale of effect. Promotional activities tend to be small to medium scale and short-term and art painting tends to be very small scale.

The policies are designed to preserve the Park's natural and other values (see 1.3 Background) which is a fundamental object of the National Parks Act, while recognising the right of the public to enjoy freedom of access to and enjoyment of these unique natural features and managing the increasing pressure, particularly from commercial interests to use these features for promotional or other activities.

In considering a concession application for promotional activities, filming, photography or art painting, the other policies of this Plan also need to be considered where associated activities, such as aircraft and vehicle use, temporary structures and animal use, are desired. Aircraft use does require a separate concession – see 4.3.3 Aircraft and Airports.

Visitor management settings (see 1.3.5.1 ROS and Visitor Management Settings, and Appendix J) are a method used in this Plan to identify and provide for a range of visitor experiences and recreational opportunities within the Park, consistent with the purposes of section 4 National Parks Act and visitor expectations. Provisions for access to and within the Park, are consistent with the visitor management settings.

The attention of filming concession applicants will be drawn to *A guideline for filming within the rohe of Ngai Tahu* (2002).

Where any of the above activities also involves State Highway 80 the approval of Transit New Zealand is required (see 4.3.13 State Highway 80).

The management of filming and photography is still an evolving matter in both New Zealand and overseas national parks. There has been little monitoring of such activity within the context of national park legislation and general policy and this lack should be addressed (see 4.3.11 Research and Monitoring).

In accordance with its legislative functions, the Department will continue to promote and advocate for conservation and national park preservation principles, through methods such as industry liaison, consultation on guidelines, support for Park interpretation and documentary projects and encouraging artistic interpretation, such as through the Department's involvement with Creative New Zealand (see 4.2.9 Interpretation).

4.3.11 Research and Monitoring

Note that section 4.3.2 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required and that, in particular, Policy 4.3.2(b) and the Explanation and Methods arising from it, specify actions in respect of the interest of Ngāi Tahu in concessions.

Research undertaken by the Department for Park management purposes does not require a concession.

Policies

4.3.11(a)

To encourage and undertake research in accordance with relevant legislation, for the benefit of Park management and/or conservation knowledge in general about the Park, provided that such research does not detract from the protection of the Park's natural, historic or cultural values.

4.3.11(b)

Monitor Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park for any social, cultural and/or physical impacts of visitor use and for changes to the natural and historic values of the Park.

4.3.11(c)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with taonga species and cultural materials and have particular regard to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for cultural materials, and to the Deed of Recognition for Aoraki.

Explanation

4.3.11(a) - Research can fill gaps in knowledge of the Park's natural resources, the natural processes at work in the Park, usage by visitors and the interactions between the Park and Park users. Where this research has little or no impact on the environment of the Park and visitors to the Park it may be carried out in accordance with the other policies and objectives of this Plan and any conditions that may be imposed. This can assist Park management, public safety, and interpretation of the features of the Park to visitors.

The Department shall request a copy of all reports on research undertaken in the Park.

Applications to undertake research should be lodged with the Department at least two months prior to the proposed research commencing. This enables the proposal to be assessed to ensure that it can be undertaken in the Park without causing an unacceptable adverse effect on the Park's natural, historic or cultural values or on Park visitors. When a concession is required, the applicant should check with the Department about processing requirements (see 4.3.2 Concessions General).

Whereas researchers have the free right of access of the general public, prior approval is required to collect samples, erect structures and use aircraft access outside of approved landing sites. The taking of samples for scientific research or educational purposes could have adverse effects on Park values. Applications for

collecting purposes are best assessed through the concession process, as this allows for an assessment to be made of possible adverse effects. It also allows conditions to be placed on the activity to avoid, remedy or mitigate any potential adverse effects.

If the effects of collecting samples become unacceptable in specific areas of the Park, then further requests to collect samples from these areas should be declined until such time as the Minister considers appropriate.

Research proposals involving visitor questionnaires or interviews, need careful consideration to ensure that the research does not adversely affect the visitors' experience within the Park.

4.3.11(b) – Monitoring programmes will be continued and/or developed to provide visitor use information, to determine if visitor use management is satisfactory, and to determine if concession conditions are being adhered to. Monitoring of the Park's natural and historic values will also occur in accordance with the provisions set out in 4.1 of this Plan. Monitoring will inter alia, consider the following matters:

- Ecological effects by concessionaire activities;
- Visitor numbers and visit duration in various parts of the Park;
- The relative levels of concessionaire visitor and independent visitor activity;
- Visitor perceptions, expectations, satisfaction;
- Public expectations about how the Department manages the Park;
- The numbers of parties visiting huts as an indicator of the number of "positioning-recreationist" aircraft landings (see 4.3.3 Aircraft and Airports);
- Park-wide aircraft noise mapping;
- Filming issues management within this and in other New Zealand and overseas national parks;
- Changes to the above over time.

4.3.11(c) – Taonga species are identified in Appendix E and the relevant provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 outlined in 4.1.1 Indigenous Plants and Animals. Any research or monitoring involving taonga species should refer to section 4.1.1.

The Department's Protocol with Ngāi Tahu for managing plant and animal cultural materials includes a provision requiring consultation in respect of any competing request for cultural materials, such as for research (see Appendix D, clause 4.3(d)).

The Deed of Recognition for Aoraki, under sections 212 – 213 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, also applies here. The Director-General is required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu. Particular regard is to be had to their views in relation to any survey to assess current and future visitor activities or any survey to identify the number and type of concessions which may be appropriate within the Tōpuni area.

Methods

4.3.11(c)

1. If a taonga species is sought policy 4.1.1(c) shall apply.
2. The Department will consult with tākata whenua and where required or appropriate Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values. This is in relation to any survey to assess current and future visitor activities or any survey to identify the number and type of concessions which may be appropriate, within the Aoraki Tōpuni area.

4.3.12 Military Manoeuvres, Exercises and Training

Policy

4.3.12 To allow military use of the Park in accordance with the 1990 Defence Training Agreement.

Explanation

4.3.12 - The Department and the New Zealand Defence Force are parties to a *Defence Training Agreement* signed 8 March 1990. The agreement provides for military training on state areas, as defined by the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977 and includes land administered by the Department subject to conditions to protect natural and historic resources and the experience of visitors.

Military manoeuvres and exercises are generally considered to be incompatible with the natural values of the Park. Occasions may arise however, where it is important in the wider national interest that areas within the Park are available for training in particular skills, such as climbing.

The military has provided valuable assistance to Park management in the past - for example, with helicopter support for search and rescue exercises and hut maintenance. These exercises are clearly of benefit to the Park and Park visitors.

This Plan identifies values of importance to Ngāi Tahu and recommends when consultation should be undertaken. If there is any doubt as to whether a proposed military exercise will impact on Ngāi Tahu values, consultation should be undertaken with tākata whenua and where appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.

In addition to considering effects on natural, historic or cultural values, it is important that particular regard is had to the experience characteristics of the visitor management setting(s) in which the military exercise is to occur. For example, the remote experience setting is managed to provide for a remote experience opportunity. Group sizes of concessionaires are restricted to a maximum of eight people and the landing of aircraft will generally not be permitted. A military exercise involving considerable personnel would be inconsistent with this setting and would be likely to adversely impact on other visitors to that setting.

A particular exercise could however, be an exception if it were authorised by the Minister in writing, as being for Park management purposes or clearly for the wider national interest.

Where military exercises are likely to involve the use of Park huts or public facilities administered by the New Zealand Alpine Club or the New Zealand Deerstalkers Association, the Club or Association should be notified prior to the activity taking place.

Method

4.3.12

When assessing the appropriateness of a military exercise, have particular regard to any adverse effects on the Park's natural, historic and cultural values and to the consistency of the exercise with the visitor management setting(s) in which it is to occur.

4.4 WORKING WITH OTHERS

4.4.1 Community Relationships

Policy

4.4.1

To establish and maintain effective working relationships with those communities, individuals and organisations that have statutory roles or who are interested in:

- the preservation and protection of natural, historic and landscape values within the Park; and/or
- the recreational use and cultural values of the Park; and/or
- the sustainable management of natural and physical resources on land not administered by the Department adjoining the Park.

Explanation

4.4.1 - Although the Department can appropriately manage the Park and adjoining land that it has been charged to administer, there are external influences that can affect the Park and there are conservation gains that can be had by working with communities. Through establishing and maintaining effective working relationships with adjoining landowners, managers and key interest groups, the Department will be able to learn new management practices and advocate for known management practices that will avoid, remedy or mitigate possible adverse effects on the Park. In some instances this relationship may include interested parties where there are clear mutual benefits to be gained from working together. Examples include mountaineering clubs and guides, universities, neighbouring land owners/managers, concessionaires, tākata whenua, community groups and other associates in the public generally.

It is particularly important to notify interested parties of any proposed activities or works that are significant and not considered to be part of the day-to-day management of the Park. These would include, for example, a new track or hut development.

Method

4.4.1

Use community relationship tools including direct consultation, electronic and other newsletters, public notices and Area office open-days, to ensure that interested parties are kept well informed about the management of the Park.

4.4.2 State Highway 80

Policies

4.4.2(a)

To have regard to State Highway 80 which, while not part of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, facilitates access to and visitor experience of the Village and the Park itself.

4.4.2(b)

Maintenance and improvement works to State Highway 80 should be allowed where they may encroach into the Park, in order to ensure the safe and efficient operation of the highway and access to the Park, in accordance with the *Roading Guidelines*.

4.4.2(c)

To consult with Transit New Zealand regarding visitor facility development and associated access which may affect the safe and efficient operation of State Highway 80 and regarding activities on the Highway that may affect the Park's values and public enjoyment of them.

Explanation

4.4.2(a) - State Highway 80 is recognised as an essential route to the Aoraki/Mt Cook Village and the Park. It is controlled and managed by Transit New Zealand ("Transit") which is a Crown entity created by the Transit New Zealand Act 1989.

Section 55(1) of the National Parks Act 1980 states "This Act shall not confer on the Minister or the Department any jurisdiction or authority with respect to any public road that is within the boundaries of the park." Transit recognises the "Highways, roadside opportunities and visitor service sites" visitor management setting along the Highway (see 4.2.1 Access within the Park), but management of the Highway will be by Transit in accordance with the Transit New Zealand Act 1989.

4.4.2(b) - Transit's mission is to provide a safe and efficient state highway system which meets the needs of road users and the communities it serves. In order for Transit to ensure that State Highway 80 is a safe and efficient highway, it is necessary to carry out ongoing protection, maintenance and improvement works. It is also important However, that the State Highway be protected, maintained and improved and activities on the Highway managed, in a way that acknowledges and maintains the values of the Park.

Much of State Highway 80 is a recently constructed highway and is therefore unlikely to require road realignment or major works, except in response to unpredictable major flood damage from several streams to the east or the Tasman River to the west. The Highway is set in an open landscape where the likelihood of sightline obstruction and road shading by vegetation is minor; hence the need for roadside vegetation management is less.

Consultation with Transit will be promoted to ensure that any maintenance or improvement works that may encroach into the Park are carried out in accordance with the *Roading Guidelines* set out in Appendix C to the *General Policy for National Parks* (1983).

Liaison and consultation with Transit will be promoted on matters such as trimming of vegetation (Section 4.1.1), landscape works (Section 4.1.2), protection works (Section 4.1.3), introduced plants (Section 4.1.4), visitor facility management (Section 4.2.3), roads, parking areas and vehicles (Section 4.2.4), camping, picnicking and shelters (Section 4.2.6), visitor safety and emergency services (Section 4.2.8), signs and interpretation (Section 4.2.9), taking of road materials (Section 4.3.7), grazing of livestock adjacent to the State Highway (Section 4.3.8), promotional activities within the Park (Section 4.3.10) and the State Highway 80/Lower Terrace Road junction realignment (Section 6.2.2).

4.4.2(c) - From time to time Transit approves non-roading activities along the Highway, such as car advertisement filming or information signage, subject to conditions to minimise disruption of, or distraction from, public use of the Highway. These activities however, can still affect Park visitors' appreciation of the Park's entranceway values, especially if filming is from a helicopter flying over the Park.

Methods

4.4.2(b)

1. Consent may be granted for State Highway maintenance and improvement works that encroach into the Park, with agreed conditions that reflect the provisions of the *Roading Guidelines*.

2. Transit will be strongly supported and encouraged to use all reasonable means to avoid and if necessary, control any introduction of invasive weeds within the road reserve and will be required to do so when operating within the Park. Department guidance on weed species will be given in accordance with section 4.1.4 Introduced Plants.

3. For areas within the Park a permit may be issued to Transit under section 5(1) National Parks Act 1980 for the management of vegetation alongside the State Highway in accordance with the following guidelines:

- The maintenance of the natural appearance of indigenous vegetation;
- The avoidance of any identified sensitive areas;
- The retention of significant visual features or views;
- The maintenance of adequate sight lines;
- The minimisation of icing because of shading;
- The need to spray with Department approval only.

4.4.2(c)

1. Consultation will be maintained with Transit to ensure that any adverse effects on the safe and efficient operation of State Highway 80 from visitor facility development within the Park can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.
2. A Park entrance sign will be maintained at the Park boundary. Only approved State Highway signs and Park signs will be permitted in the Park. Signs within the road reserves are subject to the *Roading Guidelines*.
3. The Department will seek ongoing consultation on non-roading activity approvals sought from Transit and seek conditions that reflect the Park entranceway value of the State Highway, the adjoining visitor management setting and the Plan's desired aircraft controls. The Department will also seek appropriate wording on signs that direct visitors to the Park and /or Village.

5 Aoraki / Mount Cook Village Management

5.1 BACKGROUND

5.1.1 Village Management Plan Area

The Village section of this Management Plan applies to the area marked in Figures 6, 6A and 6B. In the previous Mount Cook National Park Management Plan (1989), the National Parks Act 1980 was interpreted to say that the plan was applicable only to those parts of the Park that were administered by the Department. The parts of the Village administered by the then Tourist Hotel Corporation, in accordance with Section 10 of the Act, were not considered to be subject to the jurisdiction of the 1989 plan.

This situation has changed. The 'Tourist Hotel Corporation' area is held under a lease by the current hotel owners, and the land covered by the lease is subject to this Management Plan. As in previous Plans, the long established and obvious presence of visitor accommodation in the Village will continue to require a close working relationship between the concessionaire, the Department and the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board.

5.1.2 The Amenities Area Status

As stated in section 2.1.1, an amenities area under section 15 of the National Parks Act was gazetted in July 1999 for the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, in accordance with the *Mount Cook National Park Management Plan 1989*. For such areas the Act states:

"While any such area is set apart, the development and operation of recreational and public amenities and related services appropriate for the public use and enjoyment of the park may be authorised in accordance with this Act and the management plan.

The principles applicable to national parks shall, notwithstanding section 4 of this Act, apply only so far as they are compatible with the development and operation of such amenities and services." Section 4 of the National Parks Act states, in summary, the principle of parks being maintained in a natural state, and the public having the right of entry.

The world heritage area status still applies to the amenities area.

5.1.3 Management in the Absence of District Plan Provisions

Villages with special landscape, historic or alpine character would normally be subject to a range of specific district plan controls, under the Resource Management Act 1991. This approach can be seen for Arthur's Pass village in Selwyn District, Russell in Far North District and Whakapapa Village in Ruapehu District.

Arthur's Pass and Russell substantially comprise freehold land and district plan rules seek to control private developments so as to avoid adverse effects on the villages' special characteristics.

The same type of district plan controls can be applied under the Resource Management Act to private developments in villages within national parks. This is the approach taken by Ruapehu District for Whakapapa Village which, like Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, entirely comprises national park land.

As far as the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village is concerned, the Mackenzie District Plan has left all land management control under the Resource Management Act to this National Park Management Plan, even for concession developments not exempted by section 4 of the Act (see 1.2.4 The Resource Management Act 1991).

Preparation of the Village section of this Management Plan therefore, involved deciding what level of planning detail was needed in the continuum between a Resource Management Act district plan approach and a policy/methods approach, as in part 4 of this Management Plan. Consideration was needed on the extent to which the issues normally covered by a district plan were issues for the Village. The answer was that many of the issues are present or likely to arise during the 10-year life of the Plan. While the Department's control as land manager is potentially strong, there is a need for considerable policy/methods guidance to give continuity, consistency and clarity on how the Village should be managed and be allowed to develop.

5.1.4 Village Development Studies

The first Village planning exercise was a non-statutory one undertaken in 1969, followed by the 1976 *Mount Cook Village Review Committee's Report*. The first statutory Village planning came into effect with the *Mount Cook National Park Interim Management Plan* 1983. This 1983 plan guided Village development throughout the 1980s and 1990s, although it was amended slightly by the *Mount Cook National Park Management Plan* 1989.

The Department produced the *Mount Cook/Aoraki Village Development Review 1994*¹ (Findlay, 1994). This prompted in 1995, the Minister of Conservation request to the then Aoraki Conservation Board to prepare a new Village Development Plan to be incorporated into the National Park Management Plan review (this current Plan review process). The Village Development Plan process involved a Village Development Steering Group consisting of key stakeholders and consultants Ernst & Young and Beca Hollings & Ferner Limited, and resulted in the *Mount Cook/Aoraki Village Development Issues and Options Report* in January 1997.

The *Issues and Options Report* is thorough and was generally well accepted in its identification of a preferred Village development option. Subsequent to publication of the report and affecting the report's findings, were the final outcomes of the geotechnical studies and protection works and the flood debris flow hazard mapping. Also, the economics of Village development have proved to be

¹ Note that the *Village Development Review* and the later *Issues and Options Report* pre-date the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 so place names may not reflect the current terminology (e.g. Mount Cook/Aoraki and Mount Cook National Park instead of, in both cases, Aoraki/Mount Cook).

changeable, depending upon what the Department and the concessionaires can realistically fund or choose to fund at any point in time.

Currently the Village has several matters that direct its development. As shown on Figures 6 and 6A these are:

- a firmly defined amenities area boundary;
- the flood debris flow hazard zones that strongly limit allowable land uses;
- the existing Village layout and buildings and services locations, to the extent that these are not all easily changeable;
- the existing Hermitage accommodation concessionaire's lease areas;
- the remaining native vegetation areas within the Village (e.g. Bowen Bush and matagouri stands).

Development is ongoing in the Village. The old tavern has been moved and become the Department's administration office, a 90-room extension and refurbishment to the Hermitage was completed in 2001 and a new café opened in 2002. New house sites are being occupied in the residential area, a Village centre parking area is planned and landscape restoration work is continuing for the flood control earthworks. A stand-alone emergency services building is to be built and a major upgrade of the Visitor Centre is planned.

All of these matters and developments were envisaged in some manner within the *Issues and Options Report*. To a large degree, the principal findings and the preferred option of the report still have validity. There is little apparent reason to depart far from the report's guidance. This is reflected in the Village zoning approach, as set out in 6.1.1 Village Layout and Site Allocation.

The premise arising from the *Issues and Options Report* and the later geotechnic studies and now being followed, is that the Village is justified in remaining in the Park at its current site and that flood hazard mitigation measures will be undertaken, while they can be economically justified and any adverse effects on Park values can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Generally accepted by the Department and the *Issues and Options Report*, is that the current Village is somewhat run-down in parts and overdue for a 'face lift'. Also, that a Ngāi Tahu presence is desirable and appropriate in the Village, probably both as a whare mahana and/or as part of a re-developed Village centre or Visitor Centre.

5.1.5 Village Vision and Principles

A "Village vision" was developed through the *Issues and Options Report* process and is adopted here:

Aoraki/Mount Cook "...has the potential to become New Zealand's best known visitor destination. It should exhibit an exemplary level of environmental quality and visitor experience. It should reflect a distinctive New Zealand natural and mountain character in relation to its site planning, design and architecture. It should explicitly demonstrate the relationship that the tangata whenua, Ngāi Tahu, has with the area."

The *Issues and Options Report* identified four key principles:

- “Explicitly recognise that it is located in the [Aoraki/Mount Cook] National Park, part of the Te Wāhipounamu World Heritage [Area], one of only two [now three in 2001] World Heritage [Areas] in New Zealand;
- That [the Village] should continue to be subservient to the wider landscape;
- That the reality of existing stakeholder and lease arrangements has to be taken into account; and
- That the importance of Aoraki to Ngāi Tahu be acknowledged and incorporated in appropriate ways.”

Additional to these principles, an earlier one was established for the Village in the 1970s. The Honourable Whetu Tirikatene-Sullivan, then Minister of Lands, instructed that the Village provide for a range of accommodation types, so that all New Zealanders could afford to visit and stay in the National Park. This decision reinforced the National Parks Act principle of freedom of public entry and access to national parks.

As a further refinement of the principles of the above *Issues and Options Report*, it is emphasized that the primary purpose of the Village is for it to be a gateway to the Park; a place where visitors learn about the Park and its natural and cultural values. The Village is not to be managed as a place that would act as a barrier to the wider Park, or that would provide activities that would distract visitors from enjoying the Park.

In the objectives, policies and methods set out in this Village section of the Management Plan, the findings of the *Issues and Options Report* and its preferred option are incorporated where they still remain relevant and applicable.

5.2 VILLAGE MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES

These objectives apply only to Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, as defined by the amenities area gazetted in July 1999.

5.2.1 Primary Objectives

Having regard to the National Parks Act 1980, the primary objectives for the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village part of this management plan are:

Objective 1

To maintain and enhance Aoraki/Mount Cook Village as a location of national and international standing, while providing recreational and public amenities and their related services, including different accommodation types that reflect a range of affordability.

Objective 2

To preserve the landscapes, indigenous ecosystems and natural features of Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, to the extent that this is compatible with Objective 1.

Objective 3

To give effect to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi/the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that the provisions of the National Parks Act 1980 are clearly not inconsistent with them.

Explanation

1. This objective follows from the Village Vision and Principles (see 5.1.5) and the legislative requirements for an amenities area under section 15, National Parks Act (see 5.1.2).
2. This objective also follows from the Village Vision and Principles and the amenities area requirements, as well as recognising that there are many natural values remaining in the Village and that these contribute to the Village's character and locate the Village within the wider National Park setting.
3. Primary Objective 3 for the whole National Park (see 2.2 Management Objectives) is repeated here because the Department's statutory obligations under the Treaty of Waitangi are not lessened in any way in the Village amenities area.

5.2.2 Additional Objectives

The following additional objectives flow from these primary objectives. The Department seeks to achieve these objectives in so far as they are compatible with the primary objectives above:

1. To exterminate all introduced plant and animal pests in the Village, as far as possible;

2. To preserve the Village's heritage of places, artifacts and archaeological sites;
3. To manage the Village in such a way that it does not detract from the Park's World Heritage Area status;
4. To encourage visitors to see the Village not as a destination in itself, but as a gateway to experiencing first-hand the unique natural and cultural environment of the Park.
5. To provide for a range of visitor accommodation within the Village;
6. To ensure any commercial use within the Village is compatible with the primary objectives in 5.2.1.

6 Aoraki / Mount Cook Village Policies

The policies that follow have been prepared in terms of the National Parks Act 1980, the General Policy for National Parks 1983, other legislation listed in section 1.2 and the Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy. The General Policy has been applied and where necessary, its application to Aoraki/Mount Cook Village has been specified, expanded or interpreted.

Whilst individual policies may be read in isolation, it is necessary to read them together with their associated method statements and within the context of the Village section and in some cases the Plan as a whole, to gain a comprehensive understanding and to note that all policies in this Plan will be implemented and applied consistently with all other policies in the Plan.

The following conventions, with respect to the Department implementing policies or methods, have been used within this plan:

- policies or methods, where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making, state that a particular action or actions 'will' be undertaken;
- policies or methods that provide for strong guidance on decision-making without diminishing the roles of the Minister and other decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions 'should' be undertaken; and
- policies or methods specifically intended to allow flexibility in decision-making, state that a particular action or actions 'may' be undertaken.

6.1 VILLAGE DEVELOPMENT AND PRESERVATION

6.1.1 Village Layout and Site Allocation

Policies

6.1.1(a)

To base the Village layout upon what is already in place. It will:

- be compact in its form and make optimum use of the site available;
- recognise the needs of visitors, residents, concessionaires and Ngāi Tahu;
- be sensitive to the distinctive environmental quality and be responsive to the natural constraints and hazards of that part of the Park in which it is located;
- aim for high standards in the provision of services and facilities, consistent with the high national and international image of the Park and the Village.

6.1.1(b)

To make provision for:

- Park administration, visitor information and interpretation;
- a range of visitor accommodation;
- day visitor facilities;
- commercial activities to meet the appropriate needs of Park visitors and residents, that do not detract from the Park's unique natural and cultural environment;
- a Ngāi Tahu presence;
- accommodation and community facilities for essential staff required to service the needs of the above;
- open space and pedestrian pathways;
- emergency services;
- vehicle access and essential helicopter landings.

6.1.1(c)

To retain areas of open space within the Village to:

- preserve areas of indigenous vegetation;
- maintain clear floodways;
- provide a pleasant living environment;

- allow for environmental compatibility between the Village and the surrounding Park;
- preserve views of the mountain landscape.

6.1.1(d)

To require potential occupiers of Village sites and those seeking new concessions, to demonstrate why it is a necessity for them to be present in the Village and the benefits their presence will bring to the safe use and enjoyment of the Park by visitors.

6.1.1(e)

Existing buildings and functions, whose location is not appropriate in the Village, should be relocated to elsewhere within the amenities area or to outside the Park, as appropriate.

Explanation

6.1.1(a) & (b) - The current Village layout reflects the considerable planning effort since the 1976 *Mount Cook Village Review Committee's Report* and the 1999 major geotechnical works. What has occurred in the past will largely shape what can be done in the future, as considerable additional cost, time and disruption would be involved in departing significantly from the well-established layout. Policies 6.1.1(a) to (e) are largely those in the 1989 management plan and are still valid today. Their implementation however, now needs to occur in light of the preferred option finding of the *Mount Cook/Aoraki Village Development Issues and Options Report* 1997.

The Report makes clear that there is room for improvement in the Village. Key points noted were:

- the need for a Village heart;
- the need for more open space areas within the Village;
- the need for improved interpretation and information about the Park, within the Village;
- greater recognition of the interests of Ngāi Tahu within the Village;
- the need for improved traffic movement; and
- the need for improved car-parking and coach-parking.

These needs were addressed through the identification of three different zones within the Village, with interspersed open space areas and community and Park administration facilities. With some modification from the Report's recommendations these zones, areas and facilities are shown on Figures 6, 6A and 6B and are:

- Commercial Zone

A zone to provide for commercial activities, including visitor accommodation. The zone encompasses the area and functions contained by the Visitor Centre, The Hermitage (visitor accommodation, restaurants, café, shop and guiding concessionaires' base), the Chalets, Alpine Guides base and petrol station and the

café by the Visitor Centre. This is the heart and focal point of the Village; the 'Village centre'. Any future Ngāi Tahu presence would be within this zone.

- **Semi-independent Zone**

A zone to provide for visitor accommodation and day shelter facilities. The zone includes the Glencoe Wing (with a future use for either visitor accommodation or Hermitage staff), YHA & Hostelling International, the motels and the day shelter. The Issues and Options Report identified the potential for some zone expansion to the north of Kitchener Drive, although this area is currently outside the Village amenities area (see 5.1.2 The Amenities Area Status).

- **Residential Zone**

This zone is exclusively for residential accommodation for staff living in the Village. The zone covers the current main housing area. A limited number of unused sites are still available in this zone, but the exact number will be determined only after detailed subdivisional and architectural planning. Some housing density increase is possible.

- **Community and Park Administration Facilities**

These include the existing community facilities of school, community centre and tennis courts, the Department's Aoraki Area Office and workshop/depot and the Village oxidation ponds.

6.1.1(c) - Not all areas of the Village are suitable for development. Some areas need to be left clear of structures to protect indigenous vegetation areas, to provide for storm water drainage, or because they are flood risk areas, or are important landscape elements that assist the Village to integrate with the surrounding Park. Such areas contribute to the character of the Village environment (see also 6.1.2 Landscape Management).

Open space is available to be used for picnicking and pedestrian pathways and essential utility services which are placed underground as far as possible.

6.1.1(d) - In all zones only a few sites (as at 2004) remain unoccupied. It is vital that applications for the remaining limited number of sites are scrutinised carefully to ensure that any use proposed is appropriate for the zone and for the Village.

6.1.1(e) - Some existing buildings/uses and facilities that are incongruous with the activities surrounding them and with the layout plan (Figure 6A), and that may need to be relocated, are (as at 2003):

- In the commercial zone - Department houses 1, 2 and 3, the present generator shed, The Hermitage staff hostel and houses, and the emergency services facilities.
- In the residential zone - the Department plant nursery.

Any relocation will be undertaken if and as, resources permit and in accordance with a concession where applicable, in an ordered manner that allows the Village and the affected services to still fulfil their intended function.

Methods

6.1.1(a) & (b)

1. Development of the Village should largely maintain the layout in Figure 6, as influenced by the easement, areas and zones in Figures 6A and 6B. This layout is intended to be flexible enough to respond to changing needs and circumstances, while still ensuring that development is carried out in a controlled and directed manner.

2. Figure 6B subdivides parts of the Village into zones. Policies and methods determine how each zone should be managed (see 6.2.4 Commercial Zone, 6.2.5 Semi-independent Zone, 6.2.6 Residential Zone).

6.1.1(c)

1. Open space should generally be maintained in the Village in the form of the native vegetation areas and the streambeds shown in Figure 6.

2. Open space should be actively managed. Sites may be re-contoured and vegetation may be supplemented by plantings, to improve the quality of sites as open space (see 6.1.2 Landscape Management and 4.1.4 Introduced Plants).

6.1.1(d) & (e)

1. In considering a proposal for the allocation of a site in the Village, consistency with the layout plan (Figure 6A) is an important requirement and in addition to other statutory requirements, particular regard should be had for the following:

- can/should the proposal be carried on outside the Park?
- will there be a detrimental impact on other Park users and Village residents or on other activities already taking place in the Park and the Village?
- will the proposed activity detract from the Park's unique natural and cultural values or distract visitors from enjoying those values?
- might further development result from the proposal and if so, what impact might that further development have on the Park, the Village, Park users or Village residents?
- is the proposal within the capabilities of the utility services provided in the Village (see 6.2.9 Services)?
- will the proposal lead to additional vehicle movements and parking requirements that can be sustained by the Village layout?
- is the proposer well-enough equipped (expertise, finance etc.) to carry through and complete the proposal?

These general considerations apply equally to the proposals of the Department, other agencies and existing and potential concessionaires.

2. Any proposal for residential use of less than permanent occupancy, where that use can realistically occur outside the Park or use existing accommodation within the Village, should not be approved.

Key to Figure 6: Aoraki/Mount Cook Village

Buildings and facilities		Native vegetation areas	
A	Visitor Centre	1	Bowen Bush - indigenous low forest
B	The Hermitage		
C	Old Mountaineers Cafe	2-3	Indigenous low forest
D	Hermitage staff accommodation	4	Indigenous low forest (NB two largest parts covered by a protective covenant)
E	Chalets		
F	DOC House 1	5-6	Indigenous low forest
G	DOC House 2	7-17	Indigenous shrublands
H	Generator shed	18-21	Grasslands (also with a substantial introduced plant component)
I	DOC House 3		
J	Alpine Guides/Petrol Stn/old Post Office		
K	DOC Aoraki Area Office	22-23	Wetlands
L	Tennis courts		
M	Motels		
N	Glencoe Wing	DOC	Areas held for future Department residential use (see 6.2.6 Residential Zone) and Department Visitor Centre/Village centre development (see 6.2.4 Commercial Zone)
O	Public day-shelter		
P	Parking areas		
Q	YHA & Hostelling International		
R	Community Centre		
S	Residential houses		
T	Mount Cook School		
U	DOC workshop/depot		
V	Oxidation ponds		

Note: Due to the multi-layer properties of Figure 6 it cannot be included with this PDF, if you would like a hard copy of Figure 6, 6A, 6B please contact us.

6.1.2 Landscape Management

Policies

6.1.2(a)

To preserve indigenous vegetation, flora and fauna, unless it is in the wider interests of the Park as a whole, that a site is developed for the provision of facilities.

6.1.2(b)

To actively manage areas of open space and areas of building sites that are not built upon, including the use of ground-reshaping where necessary, to:

- **achieve stable and self-sustaining landscapes with low cost maintenance requirements;**
- **provide attractive environments around buildings appropriate to the uses to which the buildings are being put;**
- **accelerate the plant colonisation process on stream fans to encourage taller indigenous vegetation species outside active riverbeds, than might establish naturally and so to assist the screening of buildings;**
- **restore sites which have been affected by earthworks or building construction so that the impact of facilities on the landscapes of the Village and the surrounding Park is minimised;**
- **maintain the quality of views both into and out of the Village;**
- **restore the predominance of indigenous vegetation species;**
- **Maintain the appropriate ecological or underlying indigenous vegetation associations as far as practicable;**
- **extend and enhance indigenous vegetation remnants;**
- **Maintain natural features as far as practicable.**

Explanation

6.1.2(a) - It has been fundamental to previous planning that Village development will recognise the location of the Village in the Park and the need to minimise its visual impact and will protect the remnant or regenerating indigenous vegetation areas, especially those of high value. The indigenous vegetation areas have been mapped and recorded in *Appendix A: Summary Asset Register, Asset Group G: Landscape - Native Plant Amenity* of the *Asset Management Plan Aoraki/Mount Cook Village 2000*, as shown on Figure 6. It is accepted that grassland sites 18 (north of the stopbank) and 21 are at least in part, identified for residential development (see Figure 6A).

6.1.2(b) - In developing a Village on the Black Birch and Glencoe Fans and on the Hermitage promontory, some impact on Park values is inevitable. This applies to both building construction and to the follow-up work, in providing attractive environments around buildings and in screening them to reduce their visual impact.

The result is substantial landscape change from the natural state, yet a change which is sensitive to its surrounding environment.

Landscape expertise should be involved throughout all building design and construction stages, because of the impact that building form, siting, exterior materials and colour schemes can have on the final landscape effect (see 6.2.1 Buildings And Architectural Standards).

Methods

6.1.2(a)

No approval should be given to further modify indigenous vegetation areas of high value within the Village, such as Bowen Bush and the dense indigenous plant associations on The Hermitage promontory.

6.1.2(b)

1. A consistent high standard of landscape management will be applied to the whole Village. To achieve this and to make the best use of landscape management techniques developed specifically for Aoraki/Mount Cook, landscape works are to be carried out in accordance with Department landscape guidelines and Department approved plans and contractors.

2. Some variation in implementing landscape works between the zones in Figure 6A is necessary to recognise the different uses of the zones' buildings. Thus in the commercial zone (see 6.2.4), clear views to the mountains are essential, less so in the semi-independent zone (see 6.2.5), while in the residential zone (see 6.2.6) the emphasis is on shelter, personal outdoor space and privacy.

3. In order to be compatible with other activities in the Village, landscape management has to:

- **facilitate snow clearing;**
- **avoid causing drainage problems;**
- **maintain easy access to underground services (see 6.2.9 Services);**
- **ensure integration of pathways and picnic areas (see 6.2.3 Pedestrian Access).**

4. As part of landscape management, the following measures may be applied:

- **earthworks and ground reshaping, provided they do not increase the potential for erosion or for obstruction of drainage;**
- **spreading of soil to a greater depth than occurs naturally, provided the soil is taken from the Park or its vicinity (see 4.3.7 Mining and Shingle/Rock Removal) and does not lead to the spread of introduced plants;**
- **application of fertiliser on a selective or spot-application basis;**

- **planting out of indigenous plants propagated from locally collected seeds or cuttings;**
- **laying of lawns (see policy 4.1.4(c)) and setting out of plant beds immediately around buildings (see 4.1.4 *Introduced Plants*).**

6.1.3 Waterways and Floodways

Policies

6.1.3(a)

To manage flood and debris flow hazards in accordance with best current information.

6.1.3(b)

To locate and design buildings and infrastructure so as to ensure a standard of protection appropriate to their use.

6.1.3(c)

To undertake ongoing monitoring to ensure that flood and debris flow protection works retain their effectiveness.

Explanation

6.1.3(a) & (b) - Three major stream channels affect the Village. Kitchener Creek and Black Birch Stream are located at either end of the Village, and Glencoe Stream passes through the middle of the Village. During heavy rainfall, smaller streams issue from Governors Bush, from built-up areas on Black Birch Fan and from water tables alongside Village roads. The swale that collects water from the Governors Bush streams also carries the overflow from the underground storage tanks for the Village water supply, which are fed from Black Birch Stream.

Building consents from the Mackenzie District Council under the Building Act 1991, are required for all buildings, including extensions to existing buildings. The District Council is required to determine whether the land on which the buildings are to be placed is subject to erosion, avulsion, alluvion, falling debris, subsidence, inundation or slippage. The Council must be satisfied that there is adequate provision to protect the land or buildings from any of these hazards. To determine these matters the Council uses appropriate experts to undertake detailed assessments of the natural hazard risks in the Village area.

Various stream channel training works to protect the Village and the Glencoe Stream bridges and road culvert have been constructed and maintained in the past. More recently, a number of technical reports (*Geotechnical Report No 1...*, 1997; Hurley, 1996; McSaveney, 1995) reassessed the natural hazards from the above waterways. The reports determined (a) that considerable extra protection works were needed; (b) that some amenities needed to be moved to avoid unacceptable risks; and (c) that the layout of the Village would be constrained by flood hazards. The required mitigation actions were consistent with the Park management plan and have been implemented.

6.1.3(c) - All major streams are highly dynamic and carry rock and stone material whose erosion and deposition can alter channel profiles markedly. Too much deposition in one place could reduce or eliminate the effectiveness of flood protection works. Monitoring needs to be maintained to ensure that protection works continue to fulfil their function. Ongoing reassessments of the hazard

situation will be required and potentially, further adjustments to protective works and the Village layout.

Methods

6.1.3(a)

1. Waterway and floodway management will be in accordance with the recommendations of the hazard assessment and geotechnical reports referenced above and as may be updated from time to time. The premise being followed, is that the Village is justified in remaining in the Park at its current site and that flood hazard mitigation measures will be taken while they can be economically justified and any adverse effects on Park values can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.

2. In the design of all development works, particular attention will be paid to the needs of stormwater runoff. As a general rule, stormwater will be channelled or piped to the nearest open swale.

6.1.3(c)

Liaison will be maintained with the Mackenzie District Council and Environment Canterbury in the monitoring of the effectiveness of floodways and flood protection works in the Village.

6.2 VILLAGE DESIGN AND USE

6.2.1 Building and Architectural Standards

Policy

6.2.1

To require buildings and all other structures to be designed and maintained to a high architectural standard appropriate to the location of the Village within the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park and in the foreground of Aoraki/Mount Cook.

Explanation

6.2.1 - This policy applies to buildings that have been approved in accordance with policies under 6.1.1 Village Layout and Site Allocation and the specific zone-related policies. It is thus subordinate to these other policies.

The requirements are related to the siting of the Village within the particular context of Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park. Very high standards need to be set and maintained for the area with its high national and international profile. In designing buildings, it must be recognised that while the purpose of the Village is to service Park visitors, nevertheless buildings should not detract from the visitor experience of the Park and its natural values and should aim to ensure that visitors have a pleasurable experience.

The *Issues and Options Report* as a follow-on from the 'Village vision' and 'key principles' (see 5.1.5) emphasised the need for a distinct building imagery for the Village. This is consistent with the intent of previous planning controls in the Village, although it is apparent that the intent has not always been delivered.

Since 1978 a panel of architects has examined and made recommendations to the Department on most new building proposals in the Village. When used, this panel has assisted in ensuring high consistent standards of design.

The advent of improved television repeaters and satellite transmission systems has resulted in increased numbers of aerials and discs obvious within the Village. A similar effect has arisen with some clotheslines, woodpiles/shelters and outside storage facilities. The individual effect of poorly sited aerials/discs and other accessory structures and the cumulative effect of them all, detract from the Village's architectural standards and aesthetic appearance. Many of the accessory structures have not received specific approval.

The above policy requirements are additional to those of the Building Act 1991 and section 25 Disabled Persons Community Welfare Act 1975, both as administered by the Mackenzie District Council.

Methods

6.2.1

1. In the event of a site being allocated for a building (see 6.1.1 Village Layout and Site Allocation), it will be the responsibility of the site holder to present a building design for approval by the Minister. Other statutory approvals, such as a building consent, will need to be obtained after Department approval has been obtained.

2. The following criteria will be applied when considering applications for the construction, relocation and maintenance of buildings in the Village:

- **any new building form, while acknowledging historical New Zealand alpine precedent, should clearly be a product of contemporary thought and consideration, related to its own time of concept and design development;**
- **profiles and finishing treatments should ensure that the Village, as viewed from outside its boundaries, remains subservient to and reflects the natural character of the surrounding Park;**
- **construction standards and materials should be applicable to the local alpine environment and evoke an environmentally sympathetic relationship with local, natural materials;**
- **colours of building materials should be restricted to the local natural palette of greys, greens and tussock tones, with a maximum reflectivity or reflectance value of 37%²;**
- **new buildings or extensions to existing buildings should not interrupt significant view-shafts, especially of Aoraki/Mount Cook, from existing buildings (except those to be moved before building construction commences) or frequently used public open space and pedestrian pathways;**
- **building design shall recognise the provisions of section 6.1.2 Landscape Management;**
- **new buildings should incorporate energy conservation within their design and be designed to eliminate all forms of uncontrolled waste, noise pollution or light spill to the surrounding Village and Park;**
- **where buildings with historic value (see 4.1.6 Historic Resources and Memorials) are being relocated within the Village, some relaxation of the above criteria may be permitted where the criteria would significantly impact on the historic value of the building;**
- **all intended accessory structures³ must be included within the building application and be subjected to the above criteria.**

² The reflectivity or reflectance value of a colour indicates the amount of light a colour will reflect, as specified on paint manufacturers' colour charts. Black has a 0% value, white a 100% value.

³ **Accessory structure:** any structure attached to a building or on an approved building site. Such structures would include television or other aerials/discs, flagpoles, fences, sheds, carports or garages, firewood shelters, hoists or lines of flags or other like structures.

3. Building proposals will be submitted to an advisory panel of architects and a landscape architect, which will make recommendations to the Department. The panel will be comprised as follows:

- two architects and a landscape architect appointed because of their familiarity with buildings, their construction and their setting within the alpine environment; plus**
- one architect appointed on the recommendation of the New Zealand Institute of Architects, for buildings within the commercial or semi-independent zones.**

4. The Minister may require changes to any building's form, location on site, materials and their treatment standards, levels, or colour schemes before approving any building design (see also 6.2.10 Village Fire Control).

5. All authorisations for buildings will require that they be maintained to a high standard, so as to ensure that the Village does not detract from the Park environment.

6. The Department will work with Village residents to achieve the discreet siting of accessory structures, such as aerials and discs, that were not specifically approved at the time of a building's most recent concession approval and if necessary will require specific approval for them.

7. For the use of stone, gravel or similar substances in authorised buildings see 4.3.7 Stone/Gravel Removal and Mining.

8. Advertising signs erected on the exterior of commercial buildings will be for identification purposes only and fit in with accepted colour schemes and building styles. They will preferably be wall-mounted, although free-standing signs in close association with the building, may be considered; roof-mounted signs will not be permitted. Signs will be considered as part of any building concession application.

6.2.2 Vehicle Access

Policies

6.2.2(a)

To provide vehicle access from the road network to building sites, in a manner that links with and complements, pedestrian access patterns.

6.2.2(b)

To provide public parking areas at the Village centre and at the day shelter, and discourage roadside parking.

6.2.2(c)

To require concessionaires to provide off-road parking for staff and overnight guests, unless it is agreed that public parking areas may be used for such purposes or that on-site staff parking is to be discouraged.

6.2.2(d)

To keep under review the options for additional Village-edge parking areas and alternative public transport systems around the Village.

Explanation

6.2.2(a) - Development activity in the Village since the 1976 *Mount Cook Village Review Committee Report* and 1989 *Mount Cook National Park Management Plan* has sought to channel vehicles around the edge of the Village. Parking areas were located at the road ends, leaving a pedestrian linkage from the Village centre to The Hermitage. The *Issues and Options Report* largely reinforced this layout although the Report's proposed road access change to The Hermitage has since been rejected because of cost, road gradient, geotechnic and the likelihood of indigenous forest disturbance.

Proposed road/vehicle access changes favoured include the SH 80/Lower Terrace Road junction realignment, Glencoe new entrance, realignment alongside the new Village centre parking area and re-design of vehicle access in the immediate area of The Hermitage.

6.2.2(b) - Parking areas are provided to avoid roadside congestion and allow free traffic movement. Roads must also be kept clear for emergency vehicles. The Village centre parking area adjoining the Visitor Centre, will be the main carpark for day visitors to the Village.

Park roads in the Village are roads for the purposes of the Land Transport Act 1998 and as such, the usual road code conditions regarding their use and control apply.

6.2.2(c) - Off-road parking also has to be provided on individual sites for the same reasons as in (b) above. However, where it is not essential that staff have parking at their work place then, as a means of reducing vehicle movements, parking may be actively discouraged in favour of staff using pedestrian or other access means.

6.2.2(d) - Currently there is a need for a parking area away from the visitor-use and residential areas of the Village, for over-night parking of concessionaire client-transport vehicles. Some day-time use by the same vehicles may also be required to reduce parked vehicle numbers, especially in the commercial zone. A suitable area could be provided with careful design, off Kitchener Drive, in the vicinity of the Department workshop/depot and oxidation ponds.

Within the next 10 to 20 years, increased visitor numbers to the Village may necessitate an additional public parking area at or near the Village boundary, with a shuttle bus or similar service around the Village. The need or otherwise, for such a facility and service will be kept under review.

Methods

6.2.2(a)

1. Roothing in the Village will largely maintain the layout in Figure 6. Additional roads, including service access roads for restricted vehicle use, will be constructed only where necessary to provide access to newly developed sites.

2. Roads will be designed to meet the following criteria:

- **maximise the use of sites;**
- **meet the needs of emergency services;**
- **facilitate snow clearing;**
- **avoid where possible, grades which would cause problems with icing or scouring by run-off waters;**
- **remain usable during storms with an intensity equivalent to 1 in 10 year flooding frequency (see 6.1.3 Waterways and Floodways);**
- **blend into the landscape character being preserved and developed in the Village (see 6.1.2 Landscape Management);**
- **be adequately lit where necessary (see 6.2.9 Services).**

3. Where potential conflict between vehicles and pedestrians requires it, roads may be given a special design treatment that slows the speed of vehicles. Such treatment may be appropriate in residential areas or on the road through the Village between the day-shelter area and the Visitor Centre/Village centre.

4. Consultation will occur with and approvals be gained as necessary from, Transit New Zealand regarding any re-alignment of the SH 80 / Lower Terrace Road junction and regarding any change to the Village roading network that may affect this junction.

6.2.2(b)

1. Parking areas will be designed to meet the same criteria as for roads (see 6.2.2(a) above). Parking areas may be developed in any of the use zones, (see Figure 6A) provided the criteria for these zones are adhered to. They should not interrupt or dominate significant view-shafts, especially of

Aoraki/Mount Cook, from existing buildings or frequently used public open space and pedestrian pathways.

2. Public parking areas may not be used by visitors for the overnight parking of caravans and campervans - provision is made for overnight camping at White Horse Hill (see 4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters) and outside the Park at Glentanner Park. An exception may be allowed for safety reasons, primarily during winter, when snow, ice or flood risk conditions render the White Horse Hill campground unusable. In these exceptional circumstances the following conditions will apply:

- a maximum of 10 vehicles with ranger approval;
- no tenting;
- no on-site waste disposal;
- payment of the campground charge.

3. The Department will provide roadside signs around the Village as required, with information or hazard warning messages. Such signs may include directional messages to locate concessionaires. Roadside advertising signs and directional signs erected by concessionaires should not be permitted. In this way a consistent pattern of sign-posting appropriate to the Village can be provided (see 6.1.2 Landscape Management and 6.2.1 Buildings And Architectural Standards).

6.2.2(d)

As for 6.2.2(b) 1.

6.2.3 Pedestrian Access

Policies

6.2.3(a)

To build upon and upgrade the system of pathways already in existence and to provide a network of pedestrian access routes around the Village, in a manner that links with and complements the Village centre and vehicle access patterns, to meet the needs of both residents and visitors.

6.2.3(b)

To provide clear connections to Park tracks outside the Village.

Explanation

6.2.3(a) - The intention since the 1976 Village review has been to recognise the Village's position in the National Park at the end of State Highway 80, where vehicles may park and visitors may then explore the Village and the Park on foot. The network of paths and tracks in and around the Village is one of the few opportunities some visitors have to move away from roadsides and safely experience the natural surroundings.

The *Issues and Options Report* however, noted that a combination of poor access, signage and alignment meant existing pathways are not being well used, with frequent pedestrian use of roads. A predominance of pedestrian access within the Village centre was seen as a future key feature.

Two types of pedestrian access currently exist in the Village. These are the main pathway between The Hermitage and the Visitor Centre, which should be the minimum standard for the Village centre, and the other pathways between and within the Village zones (see Figure 6).

It is desirable to reduce vehicle use within the Village and providing good pedestrian access helps achieve this.

6.2.3(b) - Tracks to Bowen Bush, Red Tarns, Governor's Bush, Glencoe Walk, Kea Point, Sealy Tarns and the Hooker Valley are all accessible from the Village. The tracks require clear connections to the Village pedestrian and vehicle access networks.

Methods

6.2.3(a), (b) & (c)

1. Pedestrian access within the Village centre will be designed to:

- **be adequately lit along its full extent;**
- **facilitate snow clearing and drainage to its sides;**
- **comply with 6.1.2 Landscape Management;**
- **be of sufficient width to allow emergency and servicing vehicles to use it, yet be sufficiently distinguishable from a road to be able to discourage casual use by unauthorised vehicles (including bicycles);**

- be negotiable by persons with disabilities (i.e. suitable for wheelchairs);
- have clear signage;
- be covered in particularly high-use circumstances, e.g. in front of public or commercial buildings.

2. Pedestrian pathways will be developed generally as shown in Figure 6 and be designed to:

- be adequately lit where they are likely to be used at night;
- be surfaced to a standard appropriate to the type and frequency of their use. In this regard, the highest standards in the Village will apply to the pathway between Glencoe Wing and the Village centre;
- comply with 6.1.2 Landscape Management;
- be distinguishable from roads in the Village and as far as possible, be of a lesser width than required for vehicles, so as to emphasise that vehicles (including bicycles) are not to use them;
- remain usable during storms with an intensity equivalent to 1 in 5 year flooding frequency (see 6.1.3 Waterways And Floodways);
- have clear signage, as appropriate;
- provide interpretive information.

3. Park tracks outside the Village will be clearly sign-posted from within the Village.

6.2.4 Commercial Zone

Policies

6.2.4(a)

To provide for commercial activities, including visitor accommodation, in a single area of the Village, to meet the needs of Park visitors and residents.

6.2.4(b)

To seek to maintain a range of visitor accommodation, excluding camping.

Explanation

6.2.4(a) & (b) - The terminology of the *Issues and Options Report* is used here. “Commercial” in this sense means the present concessionaire services at The Hermitage (accommodation, restaurants, café, souvenir and grocery shops, guiding concessionaires’ base, New Zealand Post agency) and the Chalets. Also the Alpine Guides shop and office, former Post Office building, petrol station, the Department’s Aoraki/Mount Cook Visitor Centre (see 6.2.7 Interpretation, Information and Park Administration) and the adjoining café. A common aspect of most of these is that clear sight lines to Aoraki/Mount Cook are available, unlike from most buildings in the semi-independent and residential zones.

Of these, the group of Alpine Guides, former Post Office, and petrol station (recently upgraded, with a bus wash-down pad) are separated from the main zone area. Future use of the former Post Office buildings is uncertain.

Visitor accommodation within the commercial zone is currently provided by The Hermitage and the Chalets. The Chalets site is identified within the *Issues and Options Report* as a potential redevelopment site for more intensive visitor accommodation. Should this happen and because the accommodation range here and elsewhere in the Village is seen as beneficial in catering for a variety of visitors, provision for the current on-site accommodation range may be needed elsewhere in the Village (see 6.2.5 Semi-independent Zone). See also 6.2.5 regarding camping.

Proposals have been considered, but not come to fruition, for building and access linkages between the Visitor Centre and nearby concessionaire operations. To keep future Department-controlled options open the un-built-upon area around the Visitor Centre and to the west, between The Hermitage and the Old Mountaineers Café lease areas, will be reserved for future Department building and/or public access use.

The desirability of a Ngāi Tahu presence in the Village is acknowledged in sections 5.1.4 and 5.1.5. In addition to being involved in any redeveloped Village centre or Visitor Centre, the tākata whenua particularly desire a whare mahana. This is literally, a ‘warm house’, a place where their spiritual contact with Aoraki can be maintained; where the practice of ahi kaa roa (keeping the ancestral home fire burning) can be continued; and that can also be a whare wānaka (a house of learning). In the terminology of the marae, the tākata whenua hold that Aoraki is the tipuna whare (the ancestral house), while the marae-atea (the courtyard), the

paepae tapu (the speakers' bench) and the other parts of a marae are there in the natural world around and in front of Aoraki. To build a tipuna whare would demean Aoraki, but a whare mahana is appropriate, where it can look up to and be on the marae of, Aoraki. The Department proposes that one of the houses/house sites referred to in Method 6.1.1(e) be transferred, via a concession, to the tākata whenua for a whare mahana.

Methods

6.2.4(a) & (b)

1. A commercial zone will be retained and developed in the area shown in Figure 6A.

2. The area marked "DOC" within the commercial zone on Figure 6 will be retained by the Department for future Visitor Centre expansion and/or Department developed building and public access linkages with the adjoining concessionaire operations.

3. Approvals for developments within the commercial zone must be consistent with all objectives and policies of this management plan that apply to the Village, where relevant.

4. The commercial zone will be designed to:

- **maintain the basic separation between vehicles and pedestrians which is being promoted throughout the Village generally;**
- **provide for visitor information services, interpretation, bookings, souvenir retailing, mountain recreation equipment, household and personal item retailing for goods that people may reasonably need to be able to buy at any time, and food and beverage facilities, ensuring that individual developments are compatible and closely linked with one another;**
- **allow for a whare mahana site for the tākata whenua;**
- **provide parking areas;**
- **facilitate snow clearing;**
- **be adequately lit and fully serviced (see 6.2.9 Services);**
- **meet the needs of emergency services;**
- **comply with 6.1.2 Landscape Management.**

6.2.5 Semi-independent Zone

Policies

6.2.5(a)

To provide for visitor accommodation and for day-shelter facilities.

6.2.5(b)

To seek to maintain a range of visitor accommodation and directly associated bar, dining and retail facilities, but excluding camping.

6.2.5(c)

To allow for staff accommodation to be provided in association with and in addition to, visitor accommodation, to the extent necessary to service the visitor accommodation with which it is associated.

6.2.5(d)

To permit accommodation sites to be redeveloped where this will make optimum use of the site available.

Explanation

6.2.5(a)&(b) - Accommodation within the semi-independent zone complements that in the commercial zone, with the range at present (2001), from high to low in terms of cost, being:

- Glencoe Wing (130 beds);
- Motels (64 beds);
- YHA & Hostelling International (60 beds).

A day-shelter and associated parking area provides shelter, a cooking area, showers and toilets for visitors to the Village.

The extent of this accommodation range and day-visitor facility is seen as beneficial in catering for a variety of visitors. Some fluctuation within the range does occur from time-to-time as visitor and staff demands change, but there is no indication at present, other than a change of function for Glencoe (see (b) below), that the current range will not be maintained.

The Park Bylaws (see Appendix A) prohibit camping (including staying overnight in any vehicle) without Department approval, within 200 metres of any formed road, which is effectively anywhere within the Village. This form of accommodation is provided at the nearby White Horse Hill campground (see 4.2.6 Camping, Picnicking and Shelters) and outside the Park at Glentanner Park. Persons wanting to camp will be directed to these areas. Method 6.2.2(b) provides for an exception for campervans for safety reasons.

6.2.5(c) - The nature of the facilities requires at least some nearby or live-in staff accommodation.

It is possible that Glencoe Wing may become the staff accommodation hostel for The Hermitage, thereby allowing the present staff hostels to be removed from their incongruous position within the commercial zone and their site re-developed.

Methods

6.2.5(a) to (d)

Visitor accommodation, staff accommodation associated with visitor accommodation and visitor day-shelter facilities, may be developed in the area shown in Figure 6B.

6.2.6 Residential Zone

Policies

6.2.6(a)

To provide for a range of accommodation to meet the needs of staff who must of necessity live in the Village.

6.2.6(b)

Residential sites may be redeveloped where this will make optimum use of the sites available.

6.2.6(c)

To minimise the intrusion of non-residential activities within the residential zone.

Explanation

6.2.6(a) - Some staff of the Department and concessionaires must reside close to their workplace in order to provide the service expected by Park visitors and to manage the Park efficiently. Other staff do not need to reside so close to their workplace and the service to Park visitors can be maintained if they live outside the Park. Some Department and concessionaire staff live in Twizel or Tekapo and commute to work in the Park. This is consistent with the objective of this Plan to contain development within the Village and have demonstrated the necessity for a presence within the Village (see 6.1.1(c) & (d)).

A variety of accommodation types have been developed in the residential zone, including single and two-storey, single and multi-bedroomed houses and flats, with taller buildings generally towards the rear (southern side) of the zone, where their height is less apparent.

Three Department houses are located in the commercial zone and in time, subject to a whare mahana proposal for one house or site (see 6.2.4), they will be relocated into the residential zone to free up their current site-use options. The Department will hold residential sites for this purpose and for other future staff needs (see Figure 6). The hostel-type staff accommodation adjacent to The Hermitage has significant cost and space utilisation advantages. The option of such development in the residential zone, albeit at a smaller scale than the existing hostels, would depend on available and suitable sites and the ability to satisfy landscape management requirements and building and architectural standards (see 6.1.2 Landscape Management and 6.2.1 Building and Architectural Standards).

6.2.6(b) - With redevelopment, some residential sites may be able to accommodate more staff members than they do at present.

6.2.6(c) - Residential amenity values can be adversely affected by commercial or non-residential activities, such as heavy vehicle use and parking and concessionaire client traffic. These potential adverse effects need to be avoided and can be addressed through concessions and enforcement of bylaws.

The current Department plant nursery occupies potential residential space and is incongruous within the residential zone. It will in time be relocated, probably to beside the Department workshop/depot.

Methods

6.2.6(a) & (b)

1. Residential accommodation may be developed in the area shown in Figure 6B.

2. A range of residential buildings adaptable to a variety of household units and living styles, should be provided. New residential buildings should be required to make optimum use of the limited space available. This should include consideration of double-storey buildings.

6.2.6(c)

The avoidance of any adverse effects of commercial or other activities within residential areas, will be specifically addressed during the consideration of any concession involving staff accommodation within the residential zone, by bylaw enforcement and by relocation of the Department plant nursery.

6.2.7 Interpretation, Information and Park Administration Facilities.

Policy

6.2.7

To provide facilities in the Village to:

- **allow for interpretation to visitors of the Park and its values;**
- **provide information to Park visitors;**
- **allow for storage, display and interpretation of artefacts and items associated with the Park or with human endeavour in the alpine environment;**
- **meet the working needs of staff involved in the administration and management of the Park and the Village;**
- **cater for emergency services for both the Park and the Village.**

Explanation

Park interpretation, information and administration facilities are on three sites within the Village - the Area Office, the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park Visitor Centre and the depot/workshop (see Figure 6).

The Visitor Centre building serves a multiple function providing:

- offices;
- public information desk;
- displays and audio-visual programmes;
- rescue operations base and equipment storage;
- Mount Cook industrial fire brigade base;
- radio communications base;
- first aid station and St John ambulance base; and
- the alarm system in the event of a breakdown in village utility services.

The Visitor Centre is, as at 2004, soon to be upgraded as a stand-alone facility to become the focal point for the Village centre. Some of the above functions will be located away from the upgraded facility (see 6.1.1(d)).

Interpretation does not need to be confined to the Visitor Centre. Outdoor opportunities, such as guided walks and interpretive displays, would also be suitable around the Village. A variety of interpretation methods will help to increase the understanding and appreciation of the Park and the place of the Village in it.

A Museum Trust is investigating/promoting the establishment of a museum in the Village, which would focus on use of the Park and particularly, on the history of alpine recreation and tourism. This museum function may become part of the upgraded Visitor Centre.

The Aoraki Area Office is a recently refurbished facility on a site adjoining the commercial zone. The depot and workshop complex, with a nearby helicopter pad,

is located on the southern edge of the Village amenities area, against the Black Birch Stream stopbank.

Methods

6.2.7

- 1. Facilities for interpretation, information and Park administration will be retained in or near their current localities, as shown in Figure 6A. These are management and administration facilities that cannot be located outside the Park.**
- 2. Accommodation for the Mount Cook Industrial Fire Brigade and the St John organisation will be continued in the Visitor Centre complex until any decision is made to relocate such facilities. There will be close liaison with the brigade (see 6.2.9 Services) and St. John.**
- 3. The large amount of information about the Park and the use made of it, which is held by the Aoraki Area Office, will be kept accessible to the public upon reasonable request.**
- 4. Artefacts of historic value and specimens of protected fauna will be acquired for display at the Visitor Centre, with the necessary approvals being sought under the Antiquities Act 1975 and the Wildlife Act 1953.**

See also 4.2.9 Interpretation.

6.2.8 Community Facilities

Policies

6.2.8(a)

To allow or provide for community facilities in the Village, primarily to meet the needs of residents in an alpine environment.

6.2.8(b)

To allow commercial activities to be carried out in community facilities where the activity does not adversely affect the needs of Village residents and is not inconsistent with the objectives and other policies for the Village.

Explanation

6.2.8(a) - Residents of the Village should be able to enjoy a range of communal amenities and facilities, preferably in multi-use buildings, comparable to those found in any other similar communities in New Zealand, while recognising the Village's location within a national park. The relative isolation and the alpine climate may impose an extra stress on residents.

At present (2004) the residents have a school (with swimming pool), a community centre providing a hall and kitchen, and fenced tennis courts. Plunket and other medical services have operated when needed from a motel unit or hotel room.

Some interest has been expressed for a non-denominational chapel/sanctuary centre in the Village, for the purposes of local services, personal prayer/meditation, funerals/tangi, and local weddings and other religious events. There has also been concern over how such a facility could avoid becoming commercialised and a tourist attraction in itself, especially as the interest is in having it sited with a view of Aoraki/Mount Cook i.e. within the commercial zone. This is arguably inconsistent with the purposes of a national park and the purposes of an amenities area. Many of the activities suggested for the building can already occur in existing multi-purpose buildings. A viewpoint of some people is that the whole Park is a chapel/sanctuary centre and that a building for this purpose is not appropriate.

6.2.8(b) - The community centre may be used for activities of a commercial nature, such as the showing of films to a paying audience, the holding of private functions, or conferences on topics relevant to the National Park, subject to the consideration of any adverse effects on the adjoining residential area.

Methods

6.2.8(a)

1. Community facilities may be maintained or developed in the areas shown generally in Figure 6B, subject to 4.3.2 Concessions General and the policies of this plan.

2. Approval for a 'chapel/sanctuary' within the Village should be given only where it would meet the following criteria:

- There is a proven necessity for a separate facility to meet the needs of residents within the Village;
- The facility is sited outside of the commercial and semi-independent zones and away from visitor use areas, to avoid it becoming a tourist attraction in itself;
- The facility being managed as a multi-denominational community facility, for non-commercial purposes, irrespective of Method 6.2.8(b) 1 below.

6.2.8(b)

1. Any concession granted should allow the concessionaire to apply to the Minister for permission to allow the community facilities to be used on an occasional basis by activities of a commercial nature. The proposed activities should be consistent with the uses for which the facilities have been designed and consistent with the Village objectives and policies of this management plan.

2. In assessing whether an activity will adversely affect the needs of Village residents, the Department will invite and have regard for, the views of the residents, preferably expressed by the Residents' Association, rather than by individuals.

6.2.9 Services

The Department, pursuant to the National Parks Act, currently provides utility services within the Village, such as roads, water supply and the sewerage system.

Policies

6.2.9(a)

To ensure the provision to a high standard of those utility services that in other communities would be the primary responsibility of the local authority.

6.2.9(b)

To place all utility services underground, where possible.

Explanation

6.2.9(a) & (b) - All previous planning in the Village has placed a high priority on the provision of services, underground wherever possible and where applicable, to sites in the Village.

Some of these services are provided directly by the Department and are termed 'the Village Local Body Assets'. Others are provided by agencies in arrangement with the Department and the Department provides some as part of its wider National Park activities. As at 2004 these services are:

Village Local Body Assets;

- roads (includes street furniture/road signs). Their provision, maintenance and snow clearing (See 6.2.2 Vehicle Access and 6.2.3 Pedestrian Access);
- water supply. The domestic supply is from intakes on Black Birch Stream and Glencoe Stream to storage tanks and then, under pressure, around the Village (see 4.1.3 Water, Snow, Ice and Riverbeds). The *Issues and Options Report* encourages a more sensitive integration of the tanks into the landscape. The fire fighting water supply is supplied from the same source as the domestic water supply, but with a separate reticulation network. Fire hydrants are positioned strategically around the Village (see 4.1.8 Fire Control);
- sewerage. From each building site by gravity flow (apart from one pumped section and one septic tank served section) to a treatment site and oxidation ponds at the south end of the Village (see 4.2.10 Waste Disposal);
- stream control. The stream control structures and streambed and flood flow monitoring equipment (see 6.1.3 Waterways and Floodways);
- industrial fire brigade (see 6.2.10 Village Fire Control);
- solid waste. Rubbish is collected from within the Village and disposed of outside the Park to the Mackenzie District Council's landfill at Twizel (see 4.2.10 Waste Disposal);
- landscape works (includes Village lighting, Village pathways not managed as part of the National Park and plantings generally outside the leased areas). Provision and maintenance of same (see 6.1.2 Landscape Management);

Other agency provided services;

- electricity supply. Apart from transformers strategically placed around the Village, all electricity supply is by underground reticulation. Private standby generators can maintain power to The Hermitage and the Visitor Centre in the event of a failure of the public supply;
- telephone. Provided by underground cable to all sites from an exchange at the rear of the old Post Office building;

Department's National Park services;

- pathways and signage (not included in Landscape or Roads above). Pathways (e.g. as in Bowen Bush) and the DOC livery signs around the Village.

The Department currently undertakes responsibility for the above Village Local Body Assets, under cost-sharing arrangements made with the Village concessionaires. The *Asset Management Plan Aoraki/Mount Cook Village* has been prepared to assist this process and the ongoing provision of high standard services.

The *Issues and Options Report* identified several services where change was desirable, future services possible and improvements needed. These included the relocation of The Hermitage generator building (see 6.1.1 (e)), the variety of signage around the Village and the quality of lighting, without compromising the National Park experience.

Given the several sources of signage and lighting management ('local body' function, Department management and lease-holding concessionaires) good co-ordination between all parties will be necessary.

Methods

6.2.9(a)

1. Services will be provided in conformity with the Village layout as shown in Figure 6. They will be positioned so as to be easily accessible for subsequent repair and maintenance work and so as to avoid as far as possible, being threatened by flooding or other natural hazards.

2. The *Asset Management Plan Aoraki/Mount Cook Village* once approved, will be used to manage those assets in the future.

3. Utility services will be provided to the edge of new building sites. Connection, repair and maintenance within a building site, will be the financial responsibility of the site occupant.

4. Co-ordination will be maintained between the Department and lease-holding concessionaires to ensure the integrated provision and management of Village lighting and signage, taking on board the recommendations of the *Issues and Options Report* recommendations.

5. All lighting will be required to shed light downwards and minimise light spill into the wider National Park; to avoid affecting people's night vision and to minimise any detraction from the natural dark values of the Village's setting within the Park.

6. Close liaison will be maintained with the companies providing electricity supply and telephone services. Any future requests for provisions for cellular phone or cable television services will be assessed through the concession process.

6.2.9(b)

When underground services are installed, a requirement will be that all sites of earthworks be rehabilitated (see 6.1.2 Landscape Management).

6.2.10 Village Fire Control

Policies

6.2.10(a)

To prevent or extinguish all uncontrolled fires in the Village.

6.2.10(b)

To require all buildings, especially those close to areas of indigenous scrub or forest, to be subject to appropriate fire control and protection measures.

6.2.10(c)

To maintain the reticulated fire-main and hydrant system throughout the Village and to extend it where necessary, in the light of future building development.

6.2.10(d)

To support and where appropriate maintain a Village fire brigade to professional standards.

Explanation

6.2.10(a) - The presence of many buildings and people in a small area of the Park is in itself a fire risk. Efforts have been made to reduce this risk to a minimum by setting up a fire brigade, providing an alarm system, public education and strategically placing fire hydrants around the Village. Some buildings also have heat detectors, smoke detectors, and/ or sprinklers.

The lighting of fires is subject to strict controls as set out in the Park Bylaws (see Appendix A).

6.2.10(b) - Care in the location and design of buildings can assist in preventing damage from fires. Fireplaces with capped chimney flues may be constructed in buildings, unless it is felt that they would pose an unacceptable fire risk to areas of indigenous vegetation. In this regard, the vegetation of most concern is that of Governors Bush, Bowen Bush and other areas of indigenous scrub and forest. Where fireplaces with capped chimney flues are not acceptable, electricity or gas must be used for heating and cooking. Building walls adjacent to indigenous vegetation will be required to have a fire-rating equivalent to the rating that would apply if the vegetation were another building. The location of buildings must allow for fire fighters to get between any building and the Village edge or vegetation.

Linkage to the Village alarm system will be required for all commercial and visitor accommodation buildings. Protection measures supported for buildings will include:

- fire safety inspections and licensing of concessionaire accommodation buildings by the Fire Service and Mackenzie District Council;
- fire protection inspection and maintenance of equipment in Crown-owned buildings by the Government Department responsible for them.

6.2.10(c) - The fire fighting water supply and hydrant system will be maintained in a safe operating condition at all times. Any comments on the system from the Fire Service or from insurance companies, will be conscientiously considered.

6.2.10(d) - Additional to the Department's overall responsibility under the Forests and Rural Fires Act 1977 (see 4.1.8 Fire Control), the Department manages the Mount Cook Industrial Fire Brigade as owner pursuant to Section 36 Fire Services Act 1975. The purpose of the brigade is to protect any property in the Aoraki/Mount Cook Village, environs and the airport from fire. The New Zealand Fire Service Commission is responsible for determining that a proper standard of efficiency is maintained. A fire plan for the Village and environs was revised in 1998.

Methods

6.2.10(a)

Promote awareness of the Park Bylaws and the restricted and prohibited fire seasons and specifically, the strict control of non-complying fires.

6.2.10(d)

The Industrial Fire Brigade or similar, will operate in terms of a fire plan, which will detail the organisation, equipment, call-out procedures and brigade responsibilities. The plan should be compatible with and complement the fire plan drawn up by the Department of Conservation in terms of the Forests and Rural Fires Act 1977 to cover outdoor fires.

APPENDIX A – THE MOUNT COOK NATIONAL PARK BYLAWS 1981

Pursuant to section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980, the Minister of Lands hereby makes the following bylaws.

Contents

1	Title and commencement
2	Interpretation
3	Pollution of parks
4	Disposal of refuse
5	Camping
5A	Conditions on access to certain places
6	Use of park huts
7	Fires
8	Vehicles
9	Parking of vehicles
10	Aircraft
11	Competitive sports
12	Use of spotlight for hunting prohibited
13	Portable generators
14	Public address systems
15	Offences
16	Penalties
17	Proceedings under Acts in respect of offences

Bylaws

1 Title and Commencement--

(1) These bylaws may be cited as the Mount Cook National Park Bylaws 1981.

(2) These bylaws shall come into force on the 1st day of April 1981.

2 Interpretation--

In these bylaws, unless the context otherwise requires,--

"The Act" means the National Parks Act 1980:

"Aerodrome" means an aerodrome licensed under the Civil Aviation Regulations 1953; and includes any place which is within the park and which is authorised under those regulations for use as an aerodrome:

"Camp" includes staying overnight in any vehicle or boat:

"Camping site" means any area that has been appropriated as a camping site under section 49(1)(d) of the Act or under section 28(1)(i) of the National Parks Act 1952:

"Hut" means a hut, hostel, or other building owned by the Department and available for public accommodation in the park:

"Hut warden" means an officer or employee of the Department bearing a written authorisation from the Commissioner empowering him to supervise the activities relating to any hut or huts in the park:

"Mount Cook/Westland Alpine track" means the Mount Cook/Westland Alpine track as defined on maps held at the Canterbury conservancy office of the Department of Conservation at Christchurch and the West Coast conservancy office of the Department of Conservation at Hokitika:

"Official notice" means a conspicuous notice publicly displayed containing instructions or directions as to conduct in the park:

"Park" means the Mount Cook National Park:

"Road" includes all tracks formed for the use of vehicles and all bridges, culverts, and fords forming part of any road.

Other expressions defined in the Act have the meanings so defined.

3 Pollution of Parks--

No person shall--

- (a) Wilfully or carelessly pollute in any manner the waters of the park; or
- (b) Wilfully or carelessly spill or cause to be spilled any petrol, oil, or similar substance in the park.

4 Disposal of Refuse--

No person shall--

- (a) Leave any object or substance introduced into the park by him, or introduced into the park and in his possession, in any part of the park other than in a suitable litter receptacle provided in the park; or
- (b) Bury any refuse in the park.

5 Camping--

(1) No person shall, without the prior permission of a ranger or officer or employee of the Department, camp in the park within 200 metres of a formed road.

(2) Every person who camps on a camping site in the park shall observe any direction--

(a) Which is--

- (i) Given to him by a ranger or officer or employee of the Department; or
- (ii) Brought to his attention by an official notice; and

(b) Which relates to the part or parts of the camping site that may be used for camping (including a direction that prohibits camping on any part or parts of the camping site).

(3) Every person who camps in the park, whether on a camping site or otherwise, shall leave the area on which he camps clean and tidy after use.

(4) No person shall camp in the park for more than 14 consecutive days without the consent of a ranger or officer of the Department.

5A. Conditions on Access to Certain Places- [Inserted by Amendment No. 1 in 1996]

(1) Any person may have access to--

(a) The Mount Cook/Westland Alpine track and all land within 500 metres on either side of that track:

(b) The area within 100 metres radius of any hut:

(c) Any emergency shelter--

subject to the conditions in subclause (2) of this bylaw.

(2) No person shall camp in any place or part of any place listed in subclause (1) of this bylaw unless--

(a) That place or that part of the place is a camping site; or

(b) That place is an emergency shelter and that person is camping in that shelter in an emergency.

6 Use of Park Huts-

(1) Except in an emergency, no person shall use any one hut for more than 7 successive nights without the prior consent of a ranger or officer or employee of the Department.

(2) Every person who uses a hut shall leave it in a clean and tidy condition after use.

(3) No person shall remain in any hut after he has been directed to leave by a ranger or hut warden on the grounds that he has acted in a manner likely to offend or annoy other people, or has damaged or appears likely to cause damage to a hut.

(4) No person shall cause or allow any dog for which he is responsible to enter or be under any hut.

7 Fires-

(1) No person shall light within the park any fire (other than a fire fuelled by gas or vaporised petrol, oil, or similar substance) within 200 metres of any formed road unless the fire is in a camping site or in a permanently constructed fireplace.

(2) No person shall light a fire within the park in circumstances where it is likely to present a fire hazard.

(3) No person shall light a fire within the park (except in a permanently constructed fireplace) within 3 metres of any tree or dry vegetation.

(4) Every person who lights a fire within the park shall keep that fire continuously under supervision until it is completely extinguished.

(5) No person shall drop, throw, or otherwise place in any combustible material any match, lighted cigarette, or other lighted matter, except for the purpose of lighting a fire as permitted by these bylaws.

(6) Nothing in this bylaw shall exempt any person from the requirement to obtain an authority or permit to light a fire in the open air within the park pursuant to sections 23 and 24 of the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977 or any other requirement of that Act and any regulations made or fire control measures taken under the authority of that Act.

8 Vehicles-

(1) Except in an emergency or where the Commissioner considers it necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration, and control of the park, no person shall drive a vehicle or permit a vehicle under his control to remain in any part of the park that is not a formed road or camping site, or has not been appropriated as a parking place under the Act.

(2) No person shall drive a vehicle on a formed road (not being a public road) within the park--

(a) If the vehicle is of a class excluded by an official notice from that formed road; or

(b) If the vehicle is not currently registered or does not display a current warrant of fitness; or

(c) If the driver does not hold a current driver's licence for the particular class of vehicle being driven.

(3) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any person who is operating a vehicle in accordance with an express authorisation in any lease or licence granted under any of sections 49 to 51 of the Act or any easement granted under section 54 of the Act.

9 Parking of Vehicles-

The driver of any vehicle shall ensure--

(a) That it is parked in accordance with the directions of any ranger or officer or employee of the Department, or the directions contained in any official notice; or

(b) Where no such directions are given, that it is parked in a safe and considerate manner and position.

10 Aircraft-

(1) Except in an emergency or where authorised by a licence or permit issued under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 or where the Commissioner considers it necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration, and control of the park--

(a) No person shall land an aircraft at or take off from any place within the park that is not an aerodrome:

(b) No person shall hover an aircraft over any part of the park.

(2) The pilot in command of an aircraft which flies in contravention of, or fails to comply with, subclause (1) of this bylaw commits an offence against these bylaws.

(3) The Commissioner may, by official notice, prohibit persons from entering any part of the park that is likely to be affected by the landing or taking off of aircraft within the park for such a period of time as he considers necessary for the safety of the public.

(4) Every person commits an offence against these bylaws who wilfully enters or wilfully remains on any part of the park at a time when entry to that part of the park is prohibited by an official notice under subclause (3) of this bylaw.

(5) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any person who is operating an aircraft in accordance with an express authorisation in any lease or licence granted under any of sections 49 to 51 of the Act or any easement granted under section 54 of the Act.

11 Competitive Sports-

(1) No person shall, without the prior written consent of a ranger or officer or employee of the Department, conduct or engage in any competitive sport or in any organised training for any competitive sport in the park.

(2) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any activity carried out on any land that is being administered under the Tourist and Health Resorts Control Act 1908 or the Tourist Hotel Corporation Act 1974¹.

12 Use of Spotlight for Hunting Prohibited-

No person shall use a spotlight within the park for the purpose of identifying or dazzling prey.

13 Portable Generators-

(1) Except in an emergency or where the Commissioner considers it is necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration, and control of the park, no person shall install or operate a portable electric generator in any part of the park.

(2) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any activity carried out on any land that is being administered under the Tourist and Health Resorts Control Act 1908 or the Tourist Hotel Corporation Act 1974.

14 Public Address Systems-

(1) No person shall install or operate any public address system in the park unless that system--

(a) Is installed in a building or vehicle; and

(b) Cannot be heard outside that building or vehicle.

(2) Nothing in this bylaw shall prevent the installation or operation of a public address system in the park for the purpose of making announcements relating to the safety of the public.

15 Offences--

Every person commits an offence against these bylaws who acts in contravention of or fails to comply in any respect with any of the provisions of these bylaws.

16 Penalties-

Every person who commits an offence against these bylaws is liable on summary conviction--

¹ Bylaw clauses 11(2) and 13(2) no longer have effect as the lands are no longer being administered under either of the two Acts mentioned, as a result of the Tourist Hotel Corporation Act 1989.

(a) In the case of an offence against bylaw 10(2) of these bylaws, to a fine not exceeding \$5,000:

(b) In the case of any other offence against these bylaws, to a fine not exceeding \$500.

17 Proceedings Under Acts In Respect Of Offences-

Nothing in these bylaws shall limit or prevent the taking of proceedings under any Act in respect of any offence committed within the park.

Dated at Wellington this 19th day of March 1981.

V. S. YOUNG, Minister of Lands.

Date of notification in Gazette: 20 March 1981.

MOUNT COOK NATIONAL PARK BYLAWS 1981, AMENDMENT NO 1

This inserted bylaw 5A into the principal bylaws.

Dated at Wellington this 25th day of November 1996.

SIMON UPTON, Minister of Conservation.

Date of notification in Gazette: 5 December 1996.

APPENDIX B – TÖPUNI FOR AORAKI/MOUNT COOK

(Schedule 80, Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998)

Description of Area

The area over which the Tōpuni is created is the area known as Aoraki/Mount Cook, located in Kā Tiritiri o te Moana, shown as Aoraki on ...[Figure 2 of this Management Plan].

Preamble

Under section 239 (clause 12.5.3 of the deed of settlement), the Crown acknowledges Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu's statement of Ngāi Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional values relating to Aoraki, as set out below.

Ngāi Tahu Values Relating to Aoraki

"In the beginning there was no Te Waipounamu or Aotearoa. The waters of Kiwa rolled over the place now occupied by the South Island, the North Island and Stewart Island. No sign of land existed.

Before Raki (the Sky Father) wedded Papatūānuku (the Earth Mother), each of them already had children by other unions. After the marriage, some of the Sky Children came down to greet their father's new wife and some even married Earth Daughters.

Among the celestial visitors were four sons of Raki who were named Aoraki (Cloud in the Sky), Rakiroa (Long Raki), Rakirua (Raki the Second), and Rārakiroa (Long Unbroken Line). They came down in a canoe, which was known as Te Waka o Aoraki. They cruised around Papatuanuku who lay as one body in a huge continent known as Hawaiiki.

Then, keen to explore, the voyagers set out to sea, but no matter how far they travelled, they could not find land. They decided to return to their celestial home but the karakia (incantation) which should have lifted the waka (canoe) back to the heavens failed and their craft ran aground on a hidden reef, turning to stone and earth in the process.

The waka listed and settled with the west side much higher out of the water than the east. Thus, the whole waka formed the South Island, hence the name: Te Waka o Aoraki. Aoraki and his brothers clambered on to the high side and were turned to stone. They are still there today. Aoraki is the mountain known to Pākehā as Mount Cook, and his brothers are the next highest peaks near him. The form of the island as it now is owes much to the subsequent deeds of Tū Te Rakiwhānoa, who took on the job of shaping the land to make it fit for human habitation.

For Ngāi Tahu, traditions such as this represent the links between the cosmological world of the gods and present generations, these histories reinforce tribal identity and continuity between generations, and document the events which shaped the environment of Te Waipounamu and Ngāi Tahu as an iwi.

The melt-waters that flow from Aoraki are sacred. On special occasions of cultural moment, the blessings of Aoraki are sought through taking of small amounts of its 'special' waters, back to other parts of the island for use in ceremonial occasions.

The mauri of Aoraki represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding all life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force, and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship of Ngāi Tahu Whanui with the mountain.

The saying 'He kapua kei runga i Aoraki, whakarewa whakarewa' ('The cloud that floats aloft Aoraki, for ever fly, stay aloft') refers to the cloud that often surrounds Aoraki. Aoraki does not always 'come out' for visitors to see, just as that a great chief is not always giving audience, or on 'show'. It is for Aoraki to choose when to emerge from his cloak of mist, a power and influence that is beyond mortals, symbolising the mana of Aoraki.

To Ngāi Tahu, Aoraki represents the most sacred of ancestors, from whom Ngāi Tahu descend and who provides the iwi with its sense of communal identity, solidarity and purpose. It follows that the ancestor embodied in the mountain remains the physical manifestation of Aoraki, the link between the supernatural and the natural world. The tapu associated with Aoraki is a significant dimension of the tribal value, and is the source of the power over life and death, which the mountain possesses."

Specific Principles Relating To Tōpuni Area (from Attachment 12.132 of the Deed of Settlement 1997)

The following specific principles are directed at the Minister of Conservation avoiding harm to, or the diminishing of, the Ngāi Tahu Values related to the Tōpuni:

- (a) Encouragement of respect for Ngāi Tahu's association with Aoraki;
- (b) Accurate portrayal of Ngāi Tahu's association with Aoraki; and
- (c) Recognition of Ngāi Tahu's relationship with wāhi tapu, including archaeological sites.

Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in relation to the Specific Principles

Pursuant to clause 12.5.10 of the Deed of Settlement, the Director-General has determined that the following actions will be taken by the Department of Conservation in relation to the specific principles:

- (a) Encouragement of respect of Ngāi Tahu's association with Aoraki

Staff, conservation board members, concessionaires and the public will be provided with information about the Ngāi Tahu values and the existence of the Tōpuni over Aoraki;

Educational material will be made available to climbers and all climbing guides explaining that to Ngāi Tahu standing on the very top of the mountain denigrates its tapu status;

A review of conditions to be applied generally to new concessions will be undertaken;

The removal of all rubbish and wastes from Aoraki will be encouraged;

The Department will ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that it disposes of waste, particularly human waste, in a way that minimises risk of contamination of waterways; and

Te Rūnanga will be consulted about the siting and design of new huts or other buildings, and particular regard will be had to their views.

(b) Accurate portrayal of Ngāi Tahu's association with Aoraki

The Department will ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that Ngāi Tahu's association with Aoraki is accurately portrayed in all of its new public information and interpretative material; and

The Department will consult with Te Rūnanga in provision of its new public information or interpretative material, and as far as reasonably practicable will only use Ngāi Tahu's cultural material with the consent of Te Rūnanga.

(c) Recognition of Ngāi Tahu's relationship with wāhi tapu, including archaeological sites

Significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation will be avoided wherever possible; and

Where significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation cannot be avoided, Te Rūnanga will be consulted and particular regard will be had to its relevant policies, including those relating to Kōiwi Tangata (unidentified human remains) and Archaeological and Rock Art Sites.

APPENDIX C – DEED OF RECOGNITION FOR AORAKI

THIS DEED IS MADE ON 22 OCTOBER 1998

BETWEEN

(1) TE RÜNANGA O NGÄI TAHU ("TE RÜNANGA")

(2) HER MAJESTY THE CROWN in light of New Zealand acting by the Minister of Conservation (the "Crown")

BACKGROUND

A On 21 November 1997 Te Rünanga and the Crown entered into a Deed of Settlement (the "Deed of Settlement") recording the matters required to give effect to a settlement of all the historical claims of Ngäi Tahu Whānui.

B Pursuant to clause 12.3 of the Deed of Settlement, Te Rünanga and the Crown agreed to enter into Deeds of Recognition acknowledging, on the terms identified below, Te Rünanga's statement of the cultural, spiritual, historic and/or traditional association on which the mana and tangata whenua status of Ngäi Tahu in relation to specific areas is based.

ACCORDINGLY, the parties acknowledge and agree as follows:

1 SPECIFIC AREA OF AORAKI

The area which is the subject of this Deed is the area known as Aoraki/Mount Cook (the "Area") as shown on Allocation Plan MS 1 (SO Plan 19831) appended to the Deed of Settlement. The Area is administered by the Department of Conservation. *[See Figure 2 of this management plan]*

2 NGÄI TAHU ASSOCIATION WITH AORAKI

2.1 Pursuant to section 206 of the Ngäi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (clause 12.2.2 of the Deed of Settlement), the Crown acknowledges Te Rünanga's statement of Ngäi Tahu's cultural, spiritual, historic and/or traditional association to Aoraki as set out below.

2.2 to 2.11 *[The Deed of recognition wording here is the same as that in the Preamble to the Tōpuni for Aoraki/Mount Cook – see Appendix B to this management plan.]*

3 ROLE OF TE RÜNANGA

3.1 By reason of the Crown's acknowledgement of the association described in clause 2, Te Rünanga must be consulted and particular regard had to its views relating to the association described in clause 2 concerning the following management and administration activities which may be undertaken from time to time by the Crown in relation to the land within the Area:

- (a) the preparation, consistent with Part IIIA of the Conservation Act and section 47 of the National parks Acct, of all Conservation Management Strategies and /or National Park Management Plans which relate to the Area;

- (b) the preparation of all non-statutory plans, strategies or programmes for the protection and management of the Area in relation to the following:
- any programme to identify and protect indigenous plants;
 - any survey to assess current and future visitor activities;
 - any departmental guidelines for search and rescue programmes;
 - any programme to identify and protect wildlife;
 - any programme to eradicate pests or other introduced species; or
 - any survey to identify the number and type of concessions which may be appropriate; and
- (c) the location, construction and relocation of any structures, huts, signs and tracks.

3.2 In order to enable Te Rūnanga to fulfil its role under clause 3.1 the Crown will provide Te Rūnanga with relevant information to enable Te Rūnanga to consider and advise its views to the Crown on any matter on which it is consulted.

3.3 The Crown will inform Te Rūnanga of all concession applications to the Area (but retains the discretion to withhold commercially sensitive material).

4 OTHER PROVISIONS

Pursuant to sections 217, 218 and 219 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (clauses 12.2.11, 12.2.12 and 12.2.13 of the Deed of Settlement):

4.1 except as expressly provided in this Deed of Recognition:

- (a) this Deed of Recognition will not affect, or be taken into account in, the exercise of any power, duty or function by any person or entity under any statute, regulation, or bylaw; and
- (b) without limiting paragraph (a), no person or entity, in considering any matter or making any decision or recommendation under statute, regulation or bylaw shall give any greater or lesser weight to Ngāi Tahu's association to the Area than that person or entity would give under the relevant statute, regulation or bylaw, as if this Deed of Recognition did not exist in respect of the Area;

4.2 unless expressly provided in this Deed of Recognition. This Deed will not affect the lawful rights or interests of any third party from time to time;

4.3 unless expressly provided in this Deed or Recognition, this Deed will not of itself have the effect of granting, creating or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, the Area.

4.4 Nothing in this Deed requires the Crown to undertake any management function referred to in clause 3 above.

5 ALIENATION OF LAND

Pursuant to section 214 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 (clause 12.2.8 of the Deed of Settlement), in the event that the Area is alienated by the Crown, this Deed of Recognition is automatically terminated (and the right of first refusal set out in Part 9 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act (Section 9 of the Deed of Settlement) applies).

6 CHANGE IN MANAGEMENT

Pursuant to clause 12.2.9 of the deed of Settlement, if there is a change in the Crown entity managing the Area, or the applicable statutory management regime over the Area, the Crown will take reasonable steps to ensure that Te Rūnanga continues to have input into the management of the Area through the negotiation, by the Minister responsible for the new management or management regime, of a new or amended deed of Recognition to replace this Deed of Recognition.

7 INTERPRETATION

7.1 Terms defined in the Deed of Settlement will have the same meaning in this Deed. In addition:

concession has the meaning given to it in the Conservation Act 1987.

7.2 To the extent that any inconsistencies exist between this Deed of Recognition and the Deed of Settlement the provisions of the Deed of Settlement will prevail.

APPENDIX D – PROTOCOLS ON THE DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION'S INTERACTION WITH NGÄI TAHU ON SPECIFIED ISSUES

(Clause 12.12, *Deed of Settlement*)

NOTIFICATION OF THE ISSUE OF PROTOCOLS

Under Section 282 (4) of the Ngäi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Minister of Conservation hereby notifies that she has issued Protocols on behalf of the Crown regarding the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngäi Tahu on specified issues, and that the Protocols as set out in the Schedule hereto were issued on 22 October 1998.

Schedule

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 The purpose of the Conservation Act 1987 is to manage natural and historic resources under that Act and the Acts in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act. Section 4 of the Conservation Act requires that the Act be so interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

1.2 The Director-General has certain management responsibilities in terms of legislation and can only delegate or share responsibility for decisions s/he makes within the limits of his/her legislation. However, in making such decisions, the Director-General will provide Te Rünanga the opportunity for input, consistent with section 4, in its policy, planning and decision-making processes on the matters set out in these Protocols.

1.3 These Protocols apply across the Ngäi Tahu Takiwä, which spans five conservancies, and the Southern and Central Regional Offices of the Department.

1.4 Both the Department and Te Rünanga are seeking a relationship consistent with the Treaty principle of partnership that achieves over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both Te Rünanga and the Department, as set out in this document.

2 PURPOSE OF PROTOCOLS

2.1 These Protocols are issued pursuant to the Settlement Legislation and section 12.12 of the 1997 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngäi Tahu, which specifies the following:

2.1.1 Definitions

Protocol means a statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rünanga, which sets out how the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers and duties in relation to specified matters within the Ngäi Tahu Claim Area, and how the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rünanga and provide for Te Rünanga's input into its decision-making process.

2.1.2 Authority to Issue, Amend or Cancel Protocols

The Minister of Conservation has the power to issue, amend and cancel Protocols.

2.1.3 Issue of Protocols

On the Settlement Date (as defined in the Settlement Legislation) the Crown has agreed through the Minister of Conservation to issue Protocols in this form on the following matters:

- (a) cultural materials;
- (b) freshwater fisheries;
- (c) culling of species of interest to Ngāi Tahu;
- (d) historic resources;
- (e) Resource Management Act 1991 involvement; and
- (f) visitor and public information.

2.1.4 Protocols subject to Crown Obligations

The Protocols shall be issued and amended subject to, and without restriction upon, the obligations of the Minister and the Department of Conservation to discharge their respective functions, powers and duties in accordance with existing law and government policy from time to time and the Crown's powers to amend policy and introduce legislation amending existing law. This clause is not intended to indicate, and should not be interpreted as indicating, any agreement by Te Rūnanga to any amendment to policy which would adversely affect the redress provided by the Crown pursuant to the Settlement Deed or the ability of either party to fulfil its obligations expressed in the Settlement Deed.

2.1.5 Noting of Protocols on CMS

(a) The existence of the Protocols, once issued, and as amended from time to time, and including a definition of the Protocols as set out above and a summary of the terms of issue of the Protocols, shall be noted in conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and national park management plans from time to time affecting the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area.

(b) Such noting of the Protocols shall be for the purpose of public notice only and shall not be amendments to the relevant strategies or plans for the purposes of section 171 of the Conservation Act 1987 or section 46 of the National Parks Act 1980.

2.1.6 Enforceability of Protocols

(a) Subject to the Crown's right to amend or cancel the Protocols, as set out in clause 10.1, the Minister of Conservation must comply with the Protocols as long as they remain in force.

(b) If the Minister of Conservation fails unreasonably to comply with the Protocols Te Rūnanga may, subject to the Crown Proceedings Act 1950, enforce the Protocols by way of public law action against the Minister of Conservation, except that damages shall not be available as a remedy.

(c) Any guidelines which are to be developed pursuant to the Protocols will not give rise to any enforceable obligations under the Protocols.

2.1.7 Limitation of Rights

Pursuant to section 286 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, unless expressly provided in the Settlement Deed, the Settlement Legislation or in the Protocols, the Protocols will not of themselves have the effect of granting, creating or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, land held, managed or administered under the Conservation Act 1987 or the statutes listed in the First Schedule to that Act.

3 IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

3.1 The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Te Rūnanga and its Papatipu Rūnanga on a continuing basis by:

- (a) maintaining at the conservancy level, with the assistance of Te Rūnanga, information provided on Papatipu Rūnanga, their office holders and addresses;
- (b) providing reasonable opportunities for Te Rūnanga and Papatipu Rūnanga to meet with Department managers and staff.

3.2 The Protocols provide for ongoing implementation of a range of matters, as well as Specific Projects which will require resourcing. It is not intended that all of the Specific Projects listed in these Protocols will be implemented in any one year. Implementation will be over time. Where these Protocols refer to Specific Projects that require resourcing, their implementation will be subject to provision being made in the relevant conservancy business plan. The process for the Department implementing any particular Specific Project in a business year will be as follows:

- The Department will meet with Te Rūnanga in each conservancy and at regional level annually to identify priorities for undertaking Specific Projects as listed in these protocols for the upcoming business year.
- The identified priorities will be taken forward by the Department into its business planning process at the conservancy and regional levels and considered along with other priorities.
- The decision on whether any Specific Projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator and the Regional General Manager.
- The Department will advise Te Rūnanga of the outcome of this process.
- Te Rūnanga and the Department will then meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan for implementation of the Specific Projects in that business year, in accordance with the resources which have been allocated in the business plan. The Department will apply the allocated resources to give effect to that work plan, subject to unforeseen management requirements which may arise from time to time, such as emergencies, adverse weather, staff shortages or reallocation of resources directed by the Minister.

3.3 The Department will:

- (a) Meet with Te Rūnanga to review implementation of these Protocols and to deal with the matters in section 3.2 four times per annum, unless otherwise agreed, in each conservancy, twice per annum at regional level, and at least once per annum at Chief Executive level;
- (b) As far as reasonably practicable, train relevant staff on these Protocols and provide ongoing training as required;

(c) As far as reasonably practicable, brief Conservation Board and NZCA members on these Protocols and the Ngāi Tahu Settlement, and provide ongoing information as required.

4 CULTURAL MATERIALS

4.1 For the purpose of these Protocols, cultural materials are defined as:

(i) plants, plant materials;

(ii) materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds to the extent to which the Department holds and is responsible for them, and which are important to Ngāi Tahu in maintaining their culture.

4.2 Current legislation means that generally some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering of cultural materials.

4.3 The Department will:

(a) Have particular regard to Te Rūnanga's cultural use policy (Kawa Hua Taiao) as it relates to the Department's activities, and other relevant Te Rūnanga statements of policy produced from time to time.

(b) Consider requests from members of Ngāi Tahu Whānui for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the appropriate legislation.

(c) Agree, where reasonably practicable, for Ngāi Tahu to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of Departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance or culling of species.

(d) Consult with Te Rūnanga in circumstances where there are competing requests from non-Ngāi Tahu persons or entities for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes, to see if the cultural and scientific or other needs can be reconciled before the Department makes a decision in respect of those requests.

4.4 Specific projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

(a) Develop and implement guidelines for each conservancy within the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā that help define levels of customary use of cultural materials, and set conditions, after consideration of tikanga, to be met for gathering.

(b) Identify local sources of plants and provide advice to Te Rūnanga with respect to the establishment by Te Rūnanga of cultivation sites.

(c) Establish Departmental cultural materials banks for cultural materials which have come into the Department's possession, and guidelines for their use.

5 FRESHWATER FISHERIES

5.1 The Department has a statutory role in advocating the conservation of aquatic life and freshwater fisheries generally. Its advocacy for freshwater biota, aquatic habitats and fish passage in all areas is primarily taken via statutory planning processes provided by the Resource Management Act 1991.

5.2 The Settlement Legislation provides the power to promulgate regulations with respect to customary freshwater fisheries in the South Island administered under the Conservation Act 1987, with such regulations to be promulgated as soon as

practicable, and in any event within two years of the Settlement Date. Besides generally consulting with Te Rūnanga and providing for its participation in the conservation and management of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats, the Department will consult and have particular regard to the advice of Te Rūnanga as an Advisory Committee appointed under section 56 of the Conservation Act on all matters concerning the management and conservation by the Department of Conservation of Taonga Fish Species (as defined in the Settlement Legislation) within the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā.

5.3 Advisory Committee

The Department will, in relation to the Taonga Fish Species and as far as reasonably practicable, provide the Advisory Committee with all relevant information to enable it to give informed advice, and will meet with the Advisory Committee at conservancy level as necessary to give effect to the Deed of Settlement and Settlement Legislation.

5.4 Customary freshwater fisheries regulations

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

(a) Provide for Te Rūnanga participation in the development and promulgation of customary freshwater fishing regulations by:

- Establishing a joint working group;
- Setting terms of reference for that working group;
- Setting timelines for progress;
- Providing information to Te Rūnanga in a timely manner and allowing Te Rūnanga an opportunity to comment.

5.5 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

(a) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to the promotion of compliance with customary freshwater fisheries regulations.

(b) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to monitoring the efficacy of the customary freshwater fisheries regulations at regular intervals.

(c) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to sharing accumulated management information and research data on customary freshwater fisheries with Te Rūnanga.

5.6 Other matters

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to provide for active participation by Te Rūnanga in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:

(a) Seeking to identify areas for co-operation in advocacy, consistent with 9 below, focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats.

(b) Consulting with Te Rūnanga in developing or contributing to research programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements. The Department confirms that it regards Te Rūnanga as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

5.7 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

(a) Conduct research to establish and address ecosystem threats to specified customary freshwater fisheries including barriers to migration, habitat loss and exotic species interaction.

(b) Contribute to the resolution of eel management issues, in particular, the administration of the fish passage regulations in the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations, and the promotion of the installation of effective fish passes where necessary and monitoring of their effects, by participating in discussions with Te Rūnanga and Te Waka a Māui me ona Toka Mahi Tuna.

(c) Identify the need for, and where necessary prepare, management plans for freshwater fisheries management.

6 CULLING OF SPECIES OF INTEREST TO NGĀI TAHU

6.1 As part of an integrated management regime, or because a species population has risen to become an ecological pest, it may from time to time be necessary for the Department to carry out a cull of a protected species under the Wildlife Act 1953. The Department recognises that Te Rūnanga is interested in such operations in the following ways:

(i) the carrying out of such a cull where the species to be culled is causing or is likely to cause ecological damage to species or habitats of particular significance to Ngāi Tahu;

(ii) the methods to be used in such culls; and

(iii) cultural materials arising from the cull.

6.2 The Department will:

(a) Have regard to any requests initiated by Te Rūnanga for the carrying out of culling operations.

(b) Consult with, and have particular regard to the views of, Te Rūnanga before deciding to carry out a cull of protected species on land administered by the Department, in respect of the reasons for the cull and the method proposed to be used.

(c) In situations where either a Fish and Game Council or a Regional Council intend to carry out a cull of protected species or game birds and the Department has a statutory role in the process, request the relevant body to consult with Te Rūnanga before carrying out any such cull.

7 HISTORIC RESOURCES

7.1 The Minister acknowledges the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them. Liaison with Te

Rūnanga is important in the management of those places containing sites of historic and cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu, including places of settlement, horticulture, natural resource harvesting, warfare, communication, and places of cultural and spiritual connection.

7.2 The Department notes that non-disclosure of locations of places known to Ngāi Tahu is a practice used by Ngāi Tahu to preserve the sanctity of a place. Respecting the principle of confidentiality brings management difficulties of a particular kind. Where information is not available, management practices which (unintentionally) contravene the cultural purpose associated with a specific site, may be put in place. Where reasonably practicable, the Department will respect the principle of confidentiality that applies to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu. The primary responsibility for identifying and assessing Ngāi Tahu heritage values rests with Te Rūnanga.

7.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

(a) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that Ngāi Tahu values attaching to identified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department are respected by the Department, for example, by the Department giving consideration to impacts from visitor numbers, facilities and services.

(b) Manage, as far as reasonably practicable, wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993.

(c) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that when issuing concessions giving authority for other parties to manage land administered by the Department, those parties manage the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993.

(d) Have particular regard to relevant Te Rūnanga policies, including those relating to Kōiwi Tangata (unidentified human remains) and Archaeological and Rock Art Sites.

(e) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that it uses Ngāi Tahu's cultural information only with the consent of Te Rūnanga.

(f) When issuing concessions to carry out activities on the land administered by the Department, request that the concessionaire consult with Te Rūnanga before using Ngāi Tahu's cultural information.

7.4 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to:

(a) Develop and implement guidelines for the identification, inventory and management of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu by the Department that take into consideration the traditional uses and practices of Ngāi Tahu and are, where reasonably practicable, consistent with Ngāi Tahu tikanga.

(b) Identify and actively protect specified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga or other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu on land administered by the Department.

(c) Develop and implement guidelines for the active protection of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu.

(d) Identify co-operative projects covering a range of options for the protection and management of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu.

(e) Develop and implement guidelines relating to the use of Ngāi Tahu's knowledge of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance of Ngāi Tahu, including the use of this information by the Department.

(f) Consult with and seek participation from Te Rūnanga with respect to research, survey or inventory projects that relate specifically to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them.

8 VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

8.1 In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department recognises the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.

8.2 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to encourage respect for Ngāi Tahu values by:

(a) As far as reasonably practicable seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between Te Rūnanga, the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars.

(b) Consulting on the provisions of interpretation and visitor facilities (if any) at wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic or cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu.

(c) Ensuring, as far as reasonably practicable, that Department information on new panels, signs, and visitor publications includes Te Rūnanga perspectives and references to the significance of the sites to Ngāi Tahu where appropriate, including the use of traditional Ngāi Tahu place names.

(d) Encouraging Te Rūnanga participation in the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes.

8.3 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to:

(a) Develop and implement guidelines on the provision of information and interpretation facilities and services for visitors, so as to identify and consider issues of concern to Te Rūnanga.

(b) Consider possibilities for Te Rūnanga to contribute to visitor appreciation of the cultural value of sites of cultural and historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department.

(c) Provide information to education providers, including kohanga reo and kura kaupapa Māori, for the development of educational resources on conservation issues and associated Ngāi Tahu values.

9 RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991

9.1 Te Rūnanga and the Department both have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act. These include effects on:

- wetlands;
- riparian management;
- freshwater fish habitat;
- water quality management;
- protection of historic resources;
- protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

9.2 From time to time, Te Rūnanga and the Department will seek to identify further issues of mutual interest for discussion. It is recognised that their concerns in any particular resource management issue may diverge and that each of them will continue to make separate submissions.

9.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to discuss the general approach that will be taken by each of Te Rūnanga and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern.

9.4 The Department will;

- (a) Have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in 9.3(a) above in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act.
- (b) Make non-confidential resource information available to Te Rūnanga to assist in improving their effectiveness in Resource Management Act advocacy work at the Papatipu Rūnanga level.

10 AMENDMENT AND REVIEW PROVISIONS FROM THE DEED

10.1 Amendment and Cancellation of Protocols

Pursuant to section 282 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998:

- (a) Protocols may be amended or cancelled by the Minister of Conservation, from time to time at the initiative of either the Crown or Te Rūnanga;
- (b) The Minister of Conservation may amend or cancel Protocols only after consulting Te Rūnanga and having regard to its views; and
- (c) As soon as reasonably practicable after the amendment, or cancellation of a Protocol, the Minister of Conservation must notify such amendment, or cancellation in the Gazette.

Dated at Wellington this 26 day of July 2001.

MATT ROBSON, for SANDRA LEE, Minister of Conservation.

(NZ Gazette 2001, page 2171)

APPENDIX E – TAONGA SPECIES

(Schedules 97 and 98 Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998)

TAONGA BIRD SPECIES FOUND IN OR NEAR AORAKI/MOUNT COOK NATIONAL PARK

Name in Māori	Name in English	Scientific Name
kāhu	Australasian harrier	<i>Circus approximans</i>
kākā	South Island kākā	<i>Nestor meridionalis meridionalis</i>
kaki	black stilt	<i>Himantopus novaeseelandiae</i>
kārearea	New Zealand falcon	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>
karoro	black-backed gull	<i>Larus dominicanus</i>
kea	kea	<i>Nestor notabilis</i>
kōau	black shag	<i>Phalacrocorax carbo</i>
	pieb shag	<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>
	little shag	<i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i>
koekoeā	long-tailed cuckoo	<i>Eudynamys taitensis</i>
kōparapara or korimako	bellbird	<i>Anthornis melanura melanura</i>
kōtuku	white heron	<i>Egretta alba</i>
kōwhiowhio	blue duck	<i>Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos</i>
kūkupa/Kererū	New Zealand wood pigeon	<i>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae</i>
kururwhenga/Kuruwhengi	New Zealand shoveller	<i>Anas rhynchos</i>
miromiro	South Island tomtit	<i>Petroica macrocephala macrocephala</i>
pārera	grey duck	<i>Anas superciliosa</i>
pīhoihoi	New Zealand pipit	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae</i>
pīpīwharau	shining cuckoo	<i>Chrysococcyx lucidus</i>
pīwakawaka	South Island fantail	<i>Rhipidura fuliginosa fuliginosa</i>
poaka	pieb stilt	<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>
pūtakitaki	paradise shelduck	<i>Tadorna variegata</i>
riroriro	grey warbler	<i>Gerygone igata</i>
ruru koukou	morepork	<i>Ninox novaeseelandiae</i>
tara	terns	<i>Sterna spp.</i>
tete	grey teal	<i>Anas gracilis</i>
tititipounamu	South Island rifleman	<i>Acanthisitta chloris chloris</i>

TAONGA PLANT SPECIES FOUND IN OR NEAR AORAKI/MOUNT COOK NATIONAL PARK

Name in Māori	Name in English	Scientific Name
aruhe	fernroot (bracken)	<i>Pteridium aquilinum</i> var. <i>esculentum</i>
horoeka	lancewood	<i>Pseudopanax crassifolius</i>
houhi	mountain ribbonwood	<i>Hoheria lyallii</i> and <i>H. glabata</i>
kāpuka	broadleaf	<i>Griselinia littoralis</i>
korokio	korokio / wire-netting bush	<i>Corokia cotoneaster</i>
koromiko / kōkōmuka	koromiko	<i>Hebe salicifolia</i>
kowhai / kōhai	kōwhai	<i>Sophora microphylla</i>
mānuka / kahikātoa	tea-tree	<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>
rātā	southern rātā	<i>Metrosideros umbellata</i>
rautāwhiri / kōhūhū	black matipo/Māpou	<i>Pittosporum tenuifolium</i>
taramea	speargrass / spaniard	<i>Aciphylla</i> spp.
tawai	beech	<i>Nothofagus</i> spp.
toatoa	mountain toatoa / celery pine	<i>Phyllocladus alpinus</i>
tutu	tutu	<i>Coriaria</i> spp.
wharariki	mountain flax	<i>Phormium cookianum</i>
wīwī	rushes	<i>Juncus</i> all indigenous <i>Jucus</i> spp. and <i>J. maritimus</i>

TAONGA FISH SPECIES FOUND IN OR NEAR AORAKI/MOUNT COOK NATIONAL PARK

Name in Māori	Name in English	Scientific name
koeke	common shrimp	<i>Palaemon affinis</i>
kōkopu/Hawai	giant bully	<i>Gobiomorphus gobioides</i>
paraki / ngaiore	common smelt	<i>Retropinna retropinna</i>
piripiripōhatu	torrentfish	<i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i>
taiwharu	giant kōkopu	<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>

APPENDIX F - PRINCIPLES OF THE TREATY OF WAITANGI

Quotations from the Waitangi Tribunal and Court of Appeal that illuminate what the Treaty principles are presently understood to be.

The quoted principles below are a combination of non-statutory opinions contained in recommendations to Government by the Waitangi Tribunal and legal interpretations of the Treaty by the Court of Appeal.

1. THE ESSENTIAL BARGAIN

The Waitangi Tribunal:

‘[The Treaty of Waitangi represents] an exchange of gifts... The gift of the right to make laws, and the promise to do so as to accord the Māori interest an appropriate priority.’ (Waitangi Tribunal, 1989a, at p52.)

‘Rangatiratanga over a taonga denotes the mana of Māori not only to possess, but to control and manage it in accordance with their own cultural preferences.’

‘While the cession of sovereignty or kawanatanga enables the Crown to make laws for conservation control and resource protection, that right is to be exercised in the light of article 2 of the Treaty. It should not diminish the principles of article 2 or the authority of the tribes to exercise control. In short, the tribal right of self-regulation or self-management is an inherent element of tino rangatiratanga.’ (Waitangi Tribunal, 1993, at p136.)

The Court of Appeal:

‘...the basic terms of the bargain were that the Queen was to govern and the Māori were to be her subjects, in return their chieftainships and possessions were to be protected, but sales of land to the Crown could be negotiated.’ (New Zealand Māori Council v. Attorney-General [1987] 1 NZLR 641 at 663 per Cooke P, the Lands Case.)

Māori were ‘guaranteed possession of lands, forests, fisheries and other possessions, promised Crown protection and granted the rights of British subjects’. (Lands Case at p672 per Richardson J.)

2. PARTNERSHIP

The Waitangi Tribunal:

‘The Treaty signifies a partnership between the Crown and the Māori people and the compact between them rests on the premise that each partner will act reasonably and in the utmost good faith towards the other.’ (Waitangi Tribunal, 1987, at p150.)

‘[The Treaty] was not intended to merely fossilise a status quo, but to provide a direction for further growth and development... the foundation for a developing social contract...’ (Waitangi Tribunal, 1989a, at p52.)

‘...neither partner in our view can demand their own benefits if there is not also an adherence to reasonable state objectives of common benefit. It ought not to be

forgotten that there were pledges on both sides.’ (Waitangi Tribunal, 1989b, at p195.)

The Court of Appeal:

The Treaty requires that:

‘each party (would) act(s) reasonably and in good faith towards the other...’ (Lands Case at p80-681 per Richardson J.)

‘The relationship between Treaty partners creates responsibilities analogous to fiduciary duties’. (Lands Case at p665 per Cooke P.)

3. DUTY TO BE INFORMED

Court of Appeal:

‘The responsibility of one Treaty partner to act in good faith fairly and reasonably towards the other puts the onus on a partner, here the Crown, when acting within its sphere to make an informed decision’. (Lands Case at p683 per Richardson J.)

4. ACTIVE PROTECTION

Waitangi Tribunal:

‘The Treaty of Waitangi obliges the Crown not only to recognise the Māori interests specified in the Treaty but actively to protect them.’ (Waitangi Tribunal, 1985, at p95.)

‘...the Treaty both assured Māori survival and envisaged their advance, but to achieve that in Treaty terms, the Crown had not merely to protect those natural resources Māori might wish to retain, but to assure the retention of a sufficient share from which they could survive and profit, and the facility to fully exploit them’. (Waitangi Tribunal, 1989b, at p194.)

Court of Appeal:

‘...the duty of the Crown is not merely passive but extends to active protection of Māori people in the use of their lands and waters to the fullest extent practicable’. (Lands Case at p664, per Cooke P.)

5. AVOID PREJUDICIAL ACTIONS

Court of Appeal:

‘...the obligation of the parties to comply with its terms is implicit... as in the law of partnership a breach of the terms of the Treaty by one of its parties gives rise to a right of redress by the other... – a fair and reasonable recognition of, and recompense for, the wrong that has occurred’. (Lands Case per Somers J.)

APPENDIX G - MEMORIAL PLAQUE GUIDELINES

The following sets out the conditions of acceptance for memorial plaques to be installed on the base of the King Memorial. These were formulated in consultation with the former Aoraki Conservation Board, Ngāi Tahu, New Zealand Alpine Club and Park staff with the objective of achieving consistency and standardisation, with subsequent limitations on memorial sides and rock-work coverage introduced by this Management Plan.

1. Plaques are to be small individual bronze plaques measuring 200mm x 120mm and have a thin raised border around the edge.
2. Typeface is to be Helvetica.
3. The essential wording is confined to a maximum of six lines.
4. Plaques will be erected on the base of the King Memorial (eastern and northern sides only, covering no more than 25% of the memorial side rock-work) and at the sole expense of relatives or friends of the deceased.

A memorial book is available in the Visitor Centre for families to record and honour the memory of a loved one.

The plaques can be obtained from various firms.

APPENDIX H – MOUNT COOK AND WESTLAND NATIONAL PARKS RESIDENT AIRCRAFT USER GROUP ENVIRONMENTAL POLICY

Mission Statement

Aviation allows large numbers of people of all ages and physical ability, who in most cases would never otherwise have the opportunity, to experience our remoter alpine regions without leaving any lasting trace and without requiring any infrastructure such as huts, tracks, toilets.

The Group's policy is to actively foster aviation, and to cultivate and maintain an environmentally aware culture, in particular awareness and consideration of potential disturbance to the values of ground based users.

Code of Practice

To develop and maintain an environmentally aware culture, in particular an awareness and consideration, at all times, of potential disturbance to ground based users.

To consider environmental effects when selecting aircraft types, in particular noise emission and aircraft capacity.

To develop and regularly review aircraft operating procedures that minimises noise emission, particularly in sensitive locations.

When safe and practicable, to follow flight paths that minimises impact on the environment.

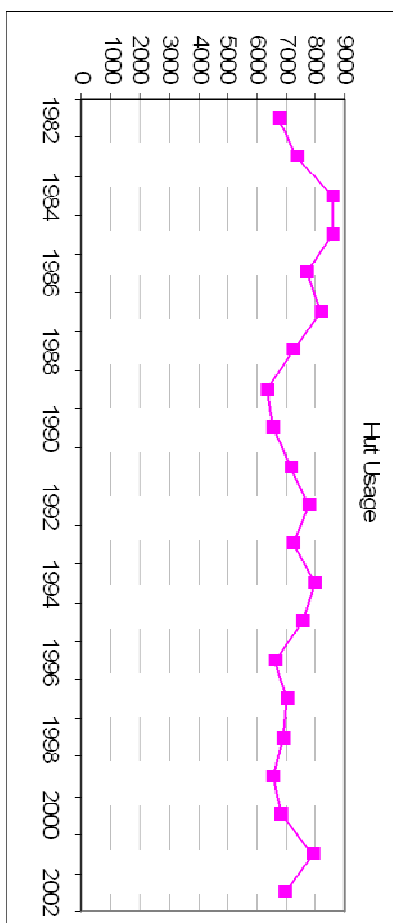
Pursue a policy of high and wide flight clear of sensitive areas and in particular strict observance of minimum vertical and horizontal clearances in the vicinity of identified ground user sensitive areas.

No flying shall take place in close proximity to the summit of Aoraki/Mount Cook.

Each operator is to elaborate in their exposition how they specifically embody this code of practice in their operation.

APPENDIX I – HUT USAGE (BEDNIGHTS) FIGURES 1981-2002 (from radio schedule figures)

PERIOD	HARRISON SADDLE	MUELLER	SEFTON HWY	HOOKER	COPLAND SHELTER	CARRIMER	EMPRESS	HALL SHELTER	PLATEAU	HAAST	DE LA BECHE	BEECHAM	TASMAN SADDLE	KELMAN	MURCHISON	LIEKE	TOTAL DoC Managed Huts	UNACCOUNTED FOR / CAMPING** NOT WESTLAND / NOT ON WAY OUT	CAROLINE HUT (GUIDED)	GUIDED NIGHTS (OTHER)	GUIDED NIGHTS AGL	TOTAL GUIDED NIGHTS	TOTAL NIGHTS SPENT IN MOUNT COOK NATIONAL PARK
Jul 81-Jun 82	138	1095		1034		340	288	145	770	137	387	987	1288										
Jul 82-Jun 83	94	878		1093		334	219	127	865	85	451	1090	1621										
Jul 83-Jun 84	312	984		1305		344	281	92	1278	57	444	1519	1564										
Jul 84-Jun 85	192	1171		1390		289	224	91	1170	84	494	1437	1869										
Jul 85-Jun 86	192	827		1154	50	285	220	92	1215	87	333	1103	1349										
Jul 86-Jun 87	185	848		1008	87	288	188	137	1782	118	328	1368	1623										
Jul 87-Jun 88	284	988		1050	103	287	195	132	1081	83	211	1335	1445										
Jul 88-Jun 89	265	630		855	133	149	123	102	1028	74	235	882	711	743									
Jul 89-Jun 90	149	1013		838	96	230	127	157	1289	66	183	680	493	1053									
Jul 90-Jun 91	193	1084		773	108	142	89	111	1517	80	258	905	800	1154									
Jul 91-Jun 92	228	907		1019	101	286	174	119	832	12	227	634	791	1983									
Jul 92-Jun 93	313	877		743	90	167	161	328	780	16	267	810	779	1620									
Jul 93-Jun 94	334	1232		940	87	148	143	181	1281	23	145	766	773	1774									
Jul 94-Jun 95	308	1071		744	84	182	184	183	1017	21	238	803	751	1810									
Jul 95-Jun 96	347	1169		274	78	145	255	145	1163	33	392												
Jul 96-Jun 97	254	1176		185	185	77	191	293	207	1326	21	290											
Jul 97-Jun 98	253	1207		153	81	174	183	201	1330	28	284												
Jul 98-Jun 99	133	1271		123	68	181	211	229	885	33	225												
Jul 99-Jun 00	185	1378		83	78	178	150	338	828	45	182												
Jul 00-Jun 01	233	1639		94	136	142	193	422	1380	0	167												
Jul 01-Jun 02	192	1538		46	116	73	143	331	1155	4	145												
Total All yrs	4781	23258	653	15016	1538	4335	4003	3878	24010	1045	5647	14589	21980	23473	4203	839	153826	18641	4440	6307	9803	18067	78878
Yrs. Counted	21	21	5	21	17	21	21	21	21	21	21	14	21	14	21	21	21						
Average/year	227	1108	109	715	91	211	191	185	1143	50	269	1039	1047	1677	200	40	7315	2330	555	901	1329	3176	9822



APPENDIX J: ROS VISITOR MANAGEMENT SETTING DESCRIPTION AND CRITERIA SUMMARY²

ROS Setting	Front country (Short-stop)	Backcountry Accessible -Motorized	Backcountry Walk-in	Backcountry Remote (NB Two shaded sub-zones reflect the degree of remoteness)
General Description	Short walks etc (max 1hr return) set in relatively natural settings, often on the perimeter of large natural areas, but readily accessible by sealed road.	Large scale natural settings more accessible by proximity (within 2 hours walk) to minor roads, 4wd vehicle tracks and high use aircraft landing sites.	Typically popular walks/tramps within the body of a large scale natural setting.	Typically the untracked or low use bulk of the backcountry.
Accessibility	Popular stopping place or short walks from sealed roads or road end parks.	On- and off-track terrain more accessible by being close to gravel roads, 4wd vehicle tracks, or aircraft landing sites.	Usually involves over 1-2 hours walking along a track from a vehicle. Visitor numbers and interactions are of such frequency to prevent a sense of isolation for most visitors.	Generally accessible by over 5 hours walking along a track, or a lesser time where off-track travel requires outdoor skills and heightened risk acceptance, and where the level of use is low and likely to result in achieving a sense of isolation or remoteness for many visitors.
Visitor groups (refer 1.3.5.2 Visitor Groups)	Short stop travellers and others in transit.	Day visitors, backcountry comfort seekers and others in transit.	Backcountry comfort seekers, bc adventurers and remoteness seekers in transit.	Backcountry adventurers and remoteness seekers.
Facility Setting	Short walks and facilities. Sometimes the beginning to other track types.	All track, hut and backcountry facility types. A range of road and transport facilities.	Walks, tramping tracks and routes. All backcountry hut and facility types.	Tramping tracks and routes. Usually only basic hut and facility types. [The accessibility and significance of the Park for mountaineering has resulted in mostly serviced-alpine huts.]
Visitor Numbers (progressively decrease across the Spectrum)	These areas are readily accessible, and while the majority of visitors would arrive at the site by car/van, and so visit the site in groups of up to 5, these sites will also be popular destinations for tour bus and guided parties.	These areas are still relatively accessible, but require a longer time commitment. Group sizes of 4-5 are still typical. These sites may also be popular destinations for school parties, club outings etc as well as day-trip guided parties.	Visitors are required to have traveled some distance on foot to reach these backcountry settings. Typical group sizes will have reduced and be more spread out. Organized groups (e.g. clubs or guided parties) will occasionally be encountered.	These areas require significant time, physical ability and backcountry skill and experience. This Zone will have relatively few visitors in small, widely spaced groups.
Maximum party size	Maximum party size 60	Maximum party size 15 ³	Maximum party size 15 [At Mueller Hut a maximum party size of 7 will apply to concessionaire guided parties – see 4.3.4 Guiding]	Maximum party size 8
Visitor interactions and expectations	Frequent and likely interactions, with some seasonal, weekend and weather-dependent variations. Visitors bring an expectation or hope of experiencing some time away from other groups.	Interactions with others will still be likely, and subject to seasonal, weekend and weather-dependent variations Visitors bring an expectation of experiencing time away from other groups.	Visitors bring an expectation of experiencing time away from other groups but the visit duration is highly variable (it could be a 4 hour walk, or a 3-day or longer climbing/tramping trip) and interaction levels will need to be customized to the site (e.g. for the Hooker Valley track the development of a one-way loop track would reduce interaction levels).	Visitors will be actively seeking a sense of solitude. Acceptable visitor interactions can be expected to decline rapidly and are most likely to occur at huts.
Typical visit duration	2 hrs	2 hrs (Tasman 4WD track) to 2 days (upper Tasman huts)	2-3 days	3+ days
Expected visitor interaction levels	Interaction rate of < 20 parties per hour of visit.	Interaction rate of < 15 parties per 2 hours of visit.	Interaction rate of < 15 parties per visit.	Interaction rate of < 5 parties per visit.
Concessionaire operations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessionaire activity allowed in all ROS classes, subject to conditions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects, including compliance with the ROS class criteria. Concessionaire client activities not to be advantaged or disadvantaged compared with those for non-concessionaire visitors, unless there is a clear specified reason for different visitor type management (e.g. as at Mueller Hut –see 4.3.4 Guiding). 			
Concessionaire effects management	Avoid, remedy or mitigate effects by setting conditions.	Avoid and mitigate effects.	Avoid effects as far as possible.	Concessionaire activity to be indistinguishable from other approved activities.
Aircraft management [See footnote ⁴]	Aircraft landings and overflights (i.e. those that are sufficiently low-flying and/or noisy as to annoy ground-based visitors) should only occur at numbers that reflect the expected visitor interaction levels. The numbers should reduce across the spectrum, from highest within “backcountry accessible-motorized” to lowest in “backcountry remote”, some areas being managed as ‘aircraft free’, and the more-remote areas preferably having minimal aircraft activity and no landings. There is generally no reason for any aircraft landings within “front country (short stop)”. Parts of the National Park clearly have aircraft activity in excess of that desirable in terms of the ROS guidelines. Section 4.3.3 Aircraft and Airports addresses aircraft management in a way that seeks to maximise ROS guidelines compliance while acknowledging existing contractual requirements and visitor use patterns.			
Management for perceptions of crowding and noise effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Undertake visitor surveys to determine annoyance levels for crowding and aircraft noise, and undertake management to achieve 25% or less of visitor annoyance (see Explanation 4.3.3(b), (c) & (d) 7). The <25% figure will be applied across all ROS classes, irrespective of differing visitor numbers, due to the different experience expectations by visitors to each ROS class. 			
Natural quiet and natural views	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Natural quiet and natural views are values to be promoted across all ROS classes. Areas with no aircraft landings will be maintained within each ROS class in recognition of providing for a range of visitor experiences. Management will also aim for aircraft over-flight noise controls over no-landing areas. 			

² This table is derived from the full range of characteristics in *The New Zealand Recreational Opportunity Spectrum – Guidelines for Users* (1983), with notes added to show any specific criteria set out in this Management Plan.

³ For Backcountry accessible – motorized, while large groups may arrive by bus they should break into parties of no more than 15 to travel within this zone.

⁴ The ROS settings are mapped in recognition of all the ROS criteria, and the main areas where aircraft activity exceeds the criteria but management action to remedy this is not feasible in the near future, are indicated by hatching on Figure 4.

Glossary

Accessory structures: any structure attached to a building or on an approved building site. Such structures would include television or other aerials/discs, flagpoles, fences, sheds, carports or garages, firewood shelters, hoists or lines of flags or other like structures.

Advocacy: the collective term for work done to promote conservation to the public and outside agencies by the Department of Conservation, conservation boards and the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Advocacy includes taking part in land use planning processes and using a range of methods to inform and educate the public and visitors on conservation issues.

Aircraft: means any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth.
Civil Aviation Act 1990

Animal: means any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of any kind, but does not include a human being.
National Parks Act 1980

Archaeological Site: any place in New Zealand that was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; and is or may be able through investigation by archaeological methods to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand.
Historic Places Act 1993

CAA: Civil Aviation Authority of New Zealand.

Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board: one of 14 conservation boards. Functions include overseeing the preparation of the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (CMS), recommending approval of conservation management plans (CMP), advising the NZCA or Director-General of Conservation on conservation matters, advising on new walkways in the region and liaising with the Fish and Game Council.

Concession: a lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Section 49 of the National Parks Act 1980.

Concessionaire: the holder of a concession.

Conservancy: the Department of Conservation has 13 offices in different parts of the country. Each office and all the land it is responsible for is called a Conservancy.

Conservation: Under the Historic Places Act 1993 conservation includes the processes of preserving, maintaining and restoring historic places. In the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter it means the process of caring for a place to safeguard its cultural heritage value.

Conservation Boards: There are 14 conservation boards, each comprising up to 12 members appointed by the Minister. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of and recommending approval of, the conservation management strategy and conservation management plans for their areas and advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority and Director-General on conservation matters of importance in their areas.

Conservation Management Strategy or CMS: a strategy which implements General Policies and establishes objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes. The strategy is reviewed every 10 years.
Conservation Act 1987 s17D

Consult/Consultation: a genuine invitation to give advice and genuine consideration of that advice. To achieve consultation, sufficient information must be supplied and sufficient time allowed by the consulting party to the consulted, to enable it to tender helpful advice. It involves an ongoing dialogue. *Wellington International Airport v Air New Zealand [1993] 1 NZLR 671*

Crowding (hut): The Department's service standard for backcountry huts states overcrowding as "more than 10% over the capacity of the hut. During the peak period, if hut capacity is exceeded by 10% over 10% of the season, management must take action to prevent this happening next season."
Department of Conservation

Department, the, DOC: the Department of Conservation.

District plan: this is prepared and changed by a territorial authority according to the requirements of the Resource Management Act 1991, for the purpose of sustainable management of natural and physical resources. District plans indicate what uses are permitted for land within the district.

Resource Management Act 1991

Ecology: the study of organisms in relation to one another and to their surroundings.

NZ Pocket Oxford Dictionary

Ecosystem: a biological system comprising a community of living organisms and their environment involved together in the process of living. There is a continuous flow of energy and matter through the system. The concept implies process and interaction. Ecosystems range in size from small freshwater ponds or pools, to the earth itself.

Effect: has the same meaning as in the Resource Management Act 1991.

EIA: environmental impact assessment. An assessment undertaken to determine the potential effects of an activity on the Park's natural and historic values.

Endemic: refers to species of plants or animals which are unique to an area or animals which may migrate, but breed only in the area.

Red Data Book of New Zealand 1981

General Policy: for the purposes of this Plan refers to the *General Policy for National Parks* 1983.

Habitat: the environment in which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned. For example, the habitat of the blue duck consists of swift water with an abundance of freshwater insects.

Historic resource: a historic place within the meaning of the Historic Places Act 1993, and includes any interest in a historic place.

Conservation Act 1987

Interpretation: conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media. It occurs in the vicinity of the subject and is designed to stimulate visitor interest, increase understanding and promote support for conservation.

Indigenous: A plant or animal species which occurs naturally in New Zealand. A synonym is "native".

ICOMOS: International Committee on Monuments and Sites.

Iwi: tribe, people. *Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991*

Iwi Authority: the authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so (*Resource Management Act 1991*). The Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 established the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu as a body corporate with the authority to act on behalf of all Ngāi Tahu Whānui.
Kaitiaki: guardian.

Kiore: the introduced Polynesian/Maori rat.

Koiwi: Bones, skeletal remains.

Lease: a grant of interest in land that gives exclusive possession of that land and makes provision for any activity on the land that the lessee is permitted to carry out.

Conservation Act 1987

Mana whenua: customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu or individual in an identified area.

Conservation Act 1987

Mahinga kai: customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered.

Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

Management plan: in relation to any park, means a management plan prepared and approved for that park, in accordance with sections 45 to 48 of the National Parks Act 1980.

Mauri: life force, sacred essence, ethos

Minister: the Minister of Conservation or duly authorised delegate.

Natural hazard: has the same meaning as it has in the Resource Management Act 1991.

Natural Resources: plants and animals, their habitats, landscapes, landforms, geological features, systems of interacting living organisms, and their environments.

Conservation Act 1987

New Zealand Conservation Authority, (NZCA): a national body of 13 appointed members established under Section 6A of the Conservation Act 1987. Amongst other functions, has the statutory responsibility for approving General Policy, conservation management strategies, plans and national park management plans. *Conservation Act 1987*

Objectives: statements of intended results. These can be broad or narrow in scope and should be accompanied by implementation provisions.

Management Planning Guidelines, DOC

Papatipu Rūnanga: The Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 identified 18 Papatipu Rūnanga, three of which represent the tākata whenua for the Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park - see **tākata whenua**.

Permit: a grant of rights to undertake an activity which does not require an interest in the land.

Conservation Act 1987

Rangatiratanga: chieftainship, decision-making rights.

Recreation/tourism concessionaire: a lessee, a licensee and/or permit holder offering commercial recreation opportunities on land administered by the Department. Examples include high alpine guides, glacier guides and aircraft operators authorised to land in the Park.

Regional Council: a locally elected council that has primary responsibility for management of water, soil, geothermal resources and pollution control. They are also responsible for regional aspects of hazard mitigation, soil conservation and hazardous substances.

Regional Plan: a plan that assists a regional council to carry out its functions. Regional plans are designed to address specific resource management issues for which regional councils are responsible. Councils must decide what regional plans they will prepare. Plans may cover matters such as water management, soil conservation, natural hazard mitigation and air pollution.

Resource Management Act 1991

Regional Policy Statement: a statement which sets out the objectives for managing resources and is prepared by a regional council in accordance with the Resource Management Act 1991. A Regional policy statement provides the overall framework for achieving sustainable management in a region and is binding on regional and district plans. *Resource Management Act 1991, Regional Policy Statements and Plans, Ministry for the Environment*

Restoration: returning a place as nearly as possible, to a known earlier state, by reassembly, reinstatement and/or the removal of extraneous additions. Refers to historic rather than ecological resources. *ICOMOS 1993*

Review: in relation to conservation management plan means to reconsider objectives and policies and, following a process of public comment, to approve a new strategy or plan, having regard to increased knowledge or changed circumstances. *Conservation Act 1987*

Rohe: boundary, tribal region. *Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991*

Rōpū Kaitiaki: a committee comprising representatives of the Arowhenua, Waihao and Moeraki Papatipu Rūnanga recognised in the Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 and which the Aoraki Area Office consults on a regular basis.

Rūnanga: assembly, council. *Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991*

Species Recovery Plan: a plan of action intended to halt the decline of a threatened species and increase its population.

Sustainability, Ecological: means the use of the components of an ecosystem in ways that allow for the perpetuation of the character and natural processes of that ecosystem.

Sustainable Management: managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being and for their health and safety while (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations, (b) safe-guarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems, and (c) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment. This definition is specific to the Resource Management Act 1991.

Resource Management Act 1991

Tākata whenua: people of a given place (Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991) in relation to a particular area; the iwi or hapu that holds mana whenua over that area.

Resource Management Act 1991

Taonga species: any birds, plants, and animals described in Schedule 97 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 found within the claim area.

Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

The schedules (see Appendix E) include those species that were negotiated through the settlement to be acknowledged as taonga species. There are also a number of other species of significance to Ngāi Tahu. The settlement provisions do not apply to these other species, but their specific values to Ngāi Tahu can be identified through appropriate consultation, as identified in this Plan.

Tenure review: the process of high-country pastoral lease land tenure review under the Crown Pastoral Land Act 1998.

The Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group: the local network of aircraft operators, with a special interest in Aoraki/Mount Cook and Westland *Tai Poutini* National Parks, whose purpose is to assist the development and co-ordination of safety procedures in these areas. The user group has also undertaken to address areas of environmental concern relating directly to the use of aircraft within these areas.

Threatened (species): a term used to encompass seven classifications for species that are at threat from extinction. Molly, J. (et al). 2002. Classifying species according to threat of extinction: a system for New Zealand.

Tikanga Māori: Māori customary values and practices.

Resource Management Act 1991

Tipuna/tupuna (pl. Tipuna/tūpuna): ancestor

Tōpuni. has a number of meanings for Ngāi Tahu, including references to both a type of dog skin cloak and the associated custom of placing such a cloak over an object or individual so as to confer the rangatiratanga of the cloak's owner upon those things. Ngāi Tahu has adopted an additional meaning for the word "Tōpuni": that of confirming and placing an "overlay" of Ngāi Tahu values upon a piece of land owned and/or managed by the Crown, while not overriding the powers of land owned and/or managed by the Crown, to manage that land for the purpose for which it is held from time to time.

UNESCO: United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation.

Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991

Wāhi tapu, wāhi tapu: sacred place.

Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991

WAI 27: the iwi Ngāi Tahu claim lodged with the Waitangi Tribunal against the Crown.

Water Channels: riverbeds, streambeds and swales.

Wetland: Permanent or intermittently wet land, shallow water and land-water margins. Wetlands may be fresh, brackish or saline and are characterised in their natural state by plants or animals that are adapted to living in wet conditions.

Wild Animal: deer, chamois, thar, wallaby, possum, goats and pigs that are living in a wild state. Except for deer kept in captivity for farming, does not include animals kept in captivity or rats, mice, rabbits, stoats, ferrets or weasels. Refer to the act for the legal definition.

Wild Animal Control Act 1977

Wildlife: any animal that is living in a wild state; and includes any animal or egg or offspring of any such animal held or hatched or born in captivity, whether pursuant to an authority granted under this Act or otherwise; but does not include any animals of any species specified in the Sixth Schedule to this Act (being animals that are wild animals subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977).

Wildlife Act 1953

References

- A guideline for filming within the rohe of Ngāi Tahu*. 2002. Screen Producers and Directors Association, Wellington and Te Runanga o Ngāi Tahu, Christchurch.
- Andersen, J.C. 1916. *Jubilee History of South Canterbury*. Whitcombe and Tombs, Auckland.
- Aoraki/Mount Cook – the ancestor of Ngāi Tahu*. 1999. Pamphlet. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Apperley, S.M. 1981. Bibliography for Mount Cook National Park. National Parks and Reserves Authority, Wellington.
- Asset Management Plan Aoraki/Mount Cook Village* (2000) Department of Conservation, Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.
- Booth, K.L., Jones, N.C., and Devlin, P.J. 1999. *Measuring the effects of Aircraft Overflights on Recreationists in Natural Settings*. Department of Conservation Technical Series 18. Department of Conservation, Wellington
- Canterbury Conservation Interpretation Plan*. 2000. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy*. 2000. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Regional Policy Statement*. 1998. Canterbury Regional Council, Christchurch.
- Chinn, T. 2001. *Stability Report, Proposed Hooker Hut site beneath Copland Pass*. NZ Glaciological Survey, National Institute of water and Atmosphere, Dunedin.
- Claire Findlay & Associates. 1999. *Criteria for establishing standards at Aoraki/Mount Cook Village*. Claire Findlay & Associates, Lyttelton.
- Connor, H. E. (ed.) 1973. *Mount Cook National Park*. Mount Cook National Park Board, Christchurch
- Customary Use of Natural Resources Consistent with Kaitiakitanga, Wise Conservation and Conservation Legislation* (Draft), 2001. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Deed of Settlement: parties: Te Runanga o Ngāi Tahu and Her Majesty the Queen in right of New Zealand* 1997. Office of Treaty Settlements, Wellington.
- Defence Training Agreement*. 1990. Unpublished. Department of Conservation and New Zealand Defence, Wellington.
- Dennis, A. & Potton, C. 1984. *The Alpine World of Mount Cook National Park*. Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington, and Cobb/Horwood Publications, Auckland.
- Environmental Protection and Enhancement Procedures*. 1987. Ministry for the Environment , Wellington.
- Ernst & Young and Beca Hollings & Ferner Ltd, 1997. *Mount Cook/Aoraki Village Development Issues and Options Report*. Ernst & Young and Beca Hollings & Ferner Ltd, Wellington.
- Findlay, C. 1994. *Mount Cook/Aoraki Village Development Review 1994*. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Geotechnical Report No 1 on Hazards, Risks and Mitigation Measures for Glencoe Stream Catchment at Mount Cook / Aoraki Village*. 1997. EBA Engineering Consultants Ltd. & Graham Rawlings Consulting Ltd., Vancouver.
- Grant, A. 1993. *Wild kea management strategy*. Canterbury Conservancy Miscellaneous Report Series No. 4. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Himalayan thar control plan. c1993. In *Canterbury Conservancy Conservation Management Planning Series No. 3*. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Historic Heritage Strategy*. 1995. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Historic Resources Strategy: Canterbury Conservancy*. 1998. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Hooker Hut*. 2000. Department report to the Canterbury/Aoraki Conservation Board. Department of Conservation, Aoraki/Mount Cook Village.

- Horn, C. 2001. *Monitoring the Effects of Aircraft on Recreationalists in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park 2001*. Unpublished report for Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Hurley, A. 1996. *Geotechnical Report No 2 Mount Cook / Aoraki Village*. Royds Consultancy, Christchurch.
- ICOMOS New Zealand Charter for the conservation of places of cultural heritage value. 1993. Te Mana o Nga Pouwhenua o te Ao – The New Zealand National Committee of the International Council on Monuments and Sites, Auckland.
- Kaupapa Atawhai Strategy: Atawhai Ruamano Conservation 2000*. [1997]. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Jacomb, C. 2002. Understanding our Pastoral Past. In *New Zealand Historic Places* No. 84. New Zealand Historic Places Trust, Wellington.
- Kearsley, G.W., Coughlan, D.P., Higham, J.E.S., Higham, E.C. and Thyne, M.A. 1998. *Impacts of Tourist Use on the New Zealand Backcountry*. Research Paper Number One. Centre for Tourism, University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Kearsley, G.W., Klinskey, A.D., Higham, J.E.S. and Higham, E.C. 1999. *Perception of Wilderness in the South Island of New Zealand: a Multiple Images Approach*. Research Paper Number Four. Centre for Tourism, University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Kearsley, G.W., Russell, S., Glen Croy, W. and Mitchell, R.D. 2001. *Recreational and Tourist use of New Zealand's Accessible Natural Areas, Activities, Motivations and Social Impacts*. Research Paper Number Nine. Centre for Tourism, University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Ladd, S.E. 1998. *A monitoring report on the Mount Cook Group. For the operation of scenic snowlandings and the positioning of helihikers on the Liebig Range*. Unpublished report for Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Ladd, S.E. 2000. *A monitoring report for Tourism Holdings Limited and Alpine Adventures. The monitoring of landing sites on the Liebig Range and the effects of aircraft activities on visitors at Blue lakes and Mueller Hut, Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park*. Unpublished report for Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Mackenzie District Council. 1999. *Proposed Mackenzie District Plan as amended by Council decisions*. Mackenzie District Council, Fairlie.
- McManaway, S. & Bellringer, R. 2002. *Monitoring the effects of aircraft on recreationists in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, 2002*. Unpublished report for Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Mcsaveney M. J. et al. 1995. *Natural hazard assessment for Mount Cook /Aoraki Village and Environs*. Institute of Geological & Nuclear Sciences Ltd., Lower Hutt.
- Meyer, K. 1989. *How to shit in the woods: an environmentally sound approach to a lost art*. Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, California.
- Minister of Conservation / Alpine Recreation Canterbury Ltd lease agreement*. 1992. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Molloy, J (et al). 2001. *Classifying species according to threat of extinction: a system for New Zealand*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Montgomery Watson. 1998. *Mount Cook Village Flood and Debris Flow Hazard Assessment for the Establishment of a Differential Rating System*. CRC Publication No. U98/11. Canterbury Regional Council, Christchurch.
- Montgomery Watson. 2000. *Department of Conservation Standard Operating Procedure for Aoraki/Mount Cook Village Flood and Debris Flow Protection Works*. Draft. Montgomery Watson, Christchurch.
- Mount Cook National Park Interim Management Plan*. 1983. Department of Lands and Survey, Christchurch.
- Mount Cook National Park Management Plan*. 1989. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Mount Cook National Park Management Plan Proposed Grazing Amendment Birch Hill Flats*. 1991. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.

- Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group Environmental Policy*. 1999. Mount Cook and Westland National Parks Resident Aircraft User Group. [see Appendix G to this plan].
- Mount Cook Village Review Committee's Report*. 1976. Department of Lands and Survey, Christchurch.
- National Parks and Reserves Authority. 1983. *General Policy for National Parks*. Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington.
- Navigating Rocks and Ice, Mount Cook and Westland National Parks. 1995. In *New Zealand Flight Safety, the Civil Aviation Safety Magazine FSM-95-1*. Civil Aviation Authority of New Zealand, Lower Hutt.
- New Zealand Tourism Strategy 2010*. 2001. Tourism Strategy Group, Wellington.
- Nomination of South-West New Zealand (Te Wahipōunamu) by the Government of New Zealand for inclusion in the World Heritage List*. 1989. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Owen, S.J. 1998. *Department of Conservation Strategic Plan for Managing Invasive Weeds*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Palman, A.J. 2001. *Aoraki Mount Cook: a guide to mountaineering in the Aoraki/Mount Cook region, including the Westland Glaciers and Godley Valley*. New Zealand Alpine Club, Christchurch.
- Pearson, J. (ed.) and Dennis, A. 1986. *The Story of Mount Cook National Park. A handbook to help you enjoy the Park*. Department of Lands and Survey, Christchurch.
- Protocols on the Department of Conservation's Interaction with Ngāi Tahu on Specified Issues*. 1999. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Recreational Strategy for Canterbury Conservancy*. 1994. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Regional Pest Management Strategy*. 1998. Canterbury Regional Council, Christchurch.
- Rogers, K. 1995. *The effect of aircraft overflights on visitors to the Mount Cook National Park*. Unpublished postgraduate diploma dissertation, University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Standard Operating Procedure: Fire control, operations, procedures and guidelines*. 1999. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- The New Zealand Recreational Opportunity Spectrum – Guidelines for users*. 1993. Hillary Commission for Sport, Fitness and Leisure, and Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Thom, D. 1987. *Heritage - The Parks of the People*. Lansdowne Press, Auckland.
- Toxward, S. 1999. *A monitoring report for Tourism Holdings Limited. The Monitoring of Landing Sites on the Leibig Range and the effects of aircraft on recreationalists at Blue Lakes, Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park*. Unpublished report for Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Visitor and Information Centre Strategy*. 2001. Department of Conservation, Hamilton.
- Visitor Strategy*. 1996. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Von Haast, H.F. 1948. *The life and times of Sir Julius Von Haast*. H.F. Von Haast, Wellington.
- Wicked weeds to watch out for ... in Aoraki/Mount Cook Area*. 2002. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Wilson, H. D. 1976. *The Vegetation of Mount Cook National Park*, New Zealand. National Parks Authority Scientific Series Number 1. National Parks Authority, Wellington.
- Wilson, H.D. 1996. *The Wild Plants of Mount Cook National Park*. Manuka and Caxton Press, Christchurch.

